



der FUSSBALL



der HUT

der HUND



die KIRSCHEN

das SPIELZEUGHAUS



das BROT



15-MINUTE

GERMAN

LEARN IN JUST 12 WEEKS

FREE  
AUDIO  
APP







**15** MINUTE  
**GERMAN**  
LEARN IN JUST 12 WEEKS

SYLVIA GOULDING





Penguin  
Random  
House

**Senior Editors** Angeles Gavira, Christine Stroyan

**Project Art Editor** Vanessa Marr

**Jacket Design Development Manager** Sophia MTT

**Jacket Designer** Juhi Sheth

**Pre-Producer** David Almond

**Senior Producer** Ana Vallarino

**Associate Publisher** Liz Wheeler

**Publishing Director** Jonathan Metcalf

**Language content for Dorling Kindersley by  
g-and-w publishing.**

**Produced for Dorling Kindersley by  
Schermyly Design Co.**

First American Edition, 2005

This revised edition published in the United States in 2018  
by DK Publishing, 345 Hudson Street,  
New York, New York 10014

18 19 20 21 22 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1  
001-305460-Jan/2018

Copyright © 2005, 2012, 2013, 2018  
Dorling Kindersley Limited

DK, a Division of Penguin Random House LLC  
All rights reserved.

Without limiting the rights under copyright reserved  
above, no part of this publication may be reproduced,  
stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or  
transmitted in any form or by any means (electronic,  
mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise)  
without the prior written permission of  
the copyright owner.

Published in Great Britain by Dorling Kindersley Limited.

A catalog record for this book is available from the  
Library of Congress.  
ISBN 978-1-4654-6295-4

DK books are available at special discounts when  
purchased in bulk for sales promotions, premiums, fund-  
raising, or educational use. For details, contact DK  
Publishing Special Markets, 345 Hudson Street, New  
York, New York 10014 or SpecialSales@dk.com

Printed in China

**A WORLD OF IDEAS:  
SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW**

[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)

# CONTENTS

How to use this book 4

## WEEK 1

### INTRODUCTIONS

Hello	8
Relatives	10
My family	12
To be and to have	14
Review and repeat	16

## WEEK 2

### EATING AND DRINKING

In the café	18
In the restaurant	20
To want	22
Dishes	24
Review and repeat	26

## WEEK 3

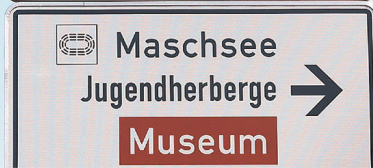
### MAKING ARRANGEMENTS

Days and months	28
Time and numbers	30
Appointments	32
On the telephone	34
Review and repeat	36

## WEEK 4

### TRAVEL

At the ticket office	38
To go and to take	40
Public transportation	42
On the road	44
Review and repeat	46





**WEEK 5**  
**GETTING AROUND**

About town	48
Finding your way	50
Sightseeing	52
At the airport	54
Review and repeat	56

**WEEK 6**  
**ACCOMMODATION**

Booking a room	58
In the hotel	60
Camping	62
Descriptions	64
Review and repeat	66

**WEEK 7**  
**SHOPPING**

Shopping	68
At the market	70
At the supermarket	72
Clothes and shoes	74
Review and repeat	76

**WEEK 8**  
**WORK AND STUDY**

Jobs	78
The office	80
Academic world	82
In business	84
Review and repeat	86

**WEEK 9**  
**HEALTH**

At the pharmacy	88
The body	90
At the doctor	92
At the hospital	94
Review and repeat	96

**WEEK 10**  
**AT HOME**

At home	98
In the house	100
The backyard	102
Pets	104
Review and repeat	106

**WEEK 11**  
**SERVICES**

Bank and post office	108
Services	110
To come	112
Police and crime	114
Review and repeat	116

**WEEK 12**  
**LEISURE AND SOCIALIZING**

Leisure time	118
Sport and hobbies	120
Socializing	122
Review and repeat	124
Reinforce and progress	126

**MENU GUIDE**

128

**ENGLISH-GERMAN DICTIONARY**

132

**GERMAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY**

146

Acknowledgments

160



# How to use this book

This main part of the book is devoted to 12 themed chapters, broken down into five 15-minute daily lessons, the last of which is a revision lesson. So, in just 12 weeks you will have completed the course. A concluding reference section contains a menu guide and English-to-German and German-to-English dictionaries.

## Warm up

Each day starts with a warm up that encourages you to recall vocabulary or phrases you have learned previously. The time in brackets indicates the amount of time you are expected to spend on each exercise.

## Instructions

Each exercise is numbered and introduced by instructions that explain what to do. In some cases additional information is given about the language point being covered.

## Cultural/Conversational tip

These panels provide additional insights into life in Germany and language usage.

18 WEEK 2

### 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Count to ten.  
(pp.10-11)  
Say "hello" and  
"goodbye." (pp.8-9)  
Ask "Do you have a  
brother?" (pp.12-13)

## IM CAFÉ

### In the café

In a German **Café** the busiest time is the afternoon when people stop for coffee and cake. Some savory dishes are also usually available, but the emphasis is on pastries and cakes.

der Zucker  
dair tsuok-ker  
sugar

### 2 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with the words below. Then test yourself by hiding the German with the cover flap. Practice the words on the picture also.

der Kaffee ohne Milch dair kuffay oh-ne milkh	black coffee
der Tee mit Milch dair tay mit milkh	tea with milk
das Gebäck duss ge-beck	pastry
das Sandwich duss zent-vitch	sandwich



der schwarze Tee  
dair shwar-ze tay  
black tea



**Cultural tip** Coffee is always served with milk and sugar, but tea drinkers should specify if they want milk (**mit Milch**) or lemon (**mit Zitrone**).

### 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



Ich hätte gern eine Tasse Tee mit Milch.  
ikh het-te gainn ie-ne tuss-ze tay mit milkh



Sonst noch etwas?  
zonsht nohk et-vuss  
Anything else?



Haben Sie Kuchen?  
hah-ben zee koo-ken  
Do you have any



## How to use the flap

The book's cover flaps allow you to conceal the German so that you can test whether you have remembered correctly.

## Revision pages

A recap of selected elements of previous lessons helps to reinforce your knowledge.

18 WEEK 2
WORK AND STUDY

### WIEDERHOLUNG

#### Review and repeat

#### 1 At the office (1 minute)

Name these items.

- das Aufgänger
- die Lampe
- der Laptop
- der Stift
- der Schreibtisch
- der Notizblock
- die Uhr

#### 2 Jobs (1 minute)

What are these jobs in German?

- docter
- plumber
- store clerk
- waiter
- keeper

#### 3 Work (1 minute)

Answer these questions following the numbered English phrases.

1 I work for myself.

2 I'm at the University of Köln.

3 I'm doing research at the University of Köln.

4 Yes, my secretary has the schedule.

#### 4 How much? (1 minute)

Answer the question with the amount shown in brackets.

1 How much is the coffee? (€ 2.50)

2 How much is the room? (€ 7)

3 How much is the ticket? (€ 25)

4 How much is the parking for one day? (€ 50)

EATING AND DRINKING 19

4 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

Practice these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.



Ich hätte gern eine Tasse Kaffee, bitte.  
ikh het-te gairn ie-ne tuss-se kuf fay, bit-te

I'd like a cup of coffee, please.



Sonst noch etwas?  
zonsst nokh et-vuss

Anything else?



Ja, ein Teilchen, bitte.  
yah, ine tile-ken, bit-te

Yes, a Danish pastry, please.



Was macht das?  
vuss mukht dass

How much is that?

ein Stück Kuchen  
ine shtewck  
koo-ken  
slice of cake

der Kaffee  
dair kuf fay  
(white) coffee

Useful phrases

Selected phrases relevant to the topic help you speak and understand.



Ja, selbstverständlich.  
yah, zelpst-fer-shtend-likh

Yes, certainly.



Danke. Was macht das?  
dan-ke. vuss mukht dass

Thank you. How much is that?



Vier Euro, bitte.  
feer oy-roe, bit-te

Four euros, please.

Text styles

Distinctive text styles differentiate German and English, and the pronunciation guide.

**In conversation**  
Illustrated dialogues reflecting how vocabulary and phrases are used in everyday situations appear throughout the book.

Say it

In these exercises you are asked to apply what you have learned using different vocabulary.

6 Say it (2 minutes)

Do you go near the train station?

The bus station, please.

When's the next coach to Kiel?





# How to use the audio app

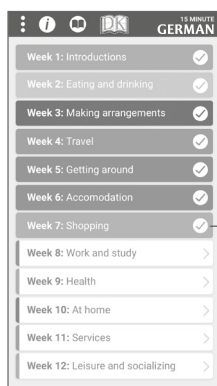
All the numbered exercises in each lesson, apart from the Warm-ups at the beginning and the Say it exercises at the end, have recorded audio, available via a free app. The app also includes a function to record yourself and listen to yourself alongside native speakers.

To start using the audio with the book, first download the **DK 15 Minute Language Course** app on your smartphone or tablet from the App Store or Google Play. Open the app and scan the QR code on the back of this book to add it to your Library. As soon as the QR code is recognized, the audio will download.

There are two ways in which you can use the audio. The first is to read through

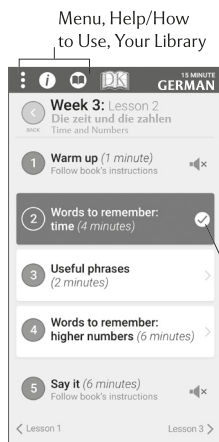
your 15-minute lessons using the book only, and then go back and work with the audio and the book together, repeating the text in the gaps provided and then recording yourself. Or you can combine the book and the audio right from the beginning, pausing the app to read the instructions on the page as you need to. Try to say the words aloud, and practice enunciating properly. Detailed instructions on how to use the app are available from the menu bar in the app.

Remember that repetition is vital to language learning. The more often you listen to a conversation or repeat an oral exercise, the more the language will sink in.



**1 Getting started**  
The list of weeks will open when the audio has been downloaded. From here you can tap into each week's lessons.

When all the lessons in a week have been completed, the week button will be filled with color and show a check mark, so you can track your progress.

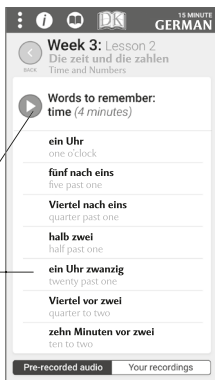


**2 Lessons week by week**  
Each numbered exercise in a lesson is listed in the app as it appears in the book. Tap on an exercise to start.

A check mark indicates when an exercise has been completed.

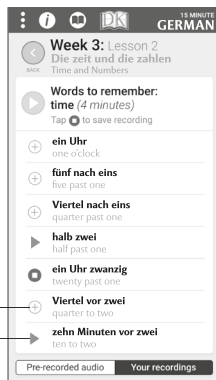
**3 Audio for exercises**  
Tap the play button to hear instructions, then the exercise. You can pause the audio at any point, and return to it.

You can tap any part of the exercise to play the audio from that point.



**4 Record yourself**  
When you are in the *Your recordings* screen, you can record yourself reading the words or participating in the conversations with native speakers, then listen back (and rerecord if desired).

Add recording  
Play recording



## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

The Warm Up panel appears at the beginning of each topic. Use it to reinforce what you have already learned and to prepare yourself for moving ahead with the new subject.

# GUTEN TAG

## Hello

In formal situations, Germans greet each other with a handshake. They are addressed with title **Herr** (for men) and **Frau** (for women) and last name. Nowadays the title **Fräulein** (Miss) is rarely used for adult women. Young people may greet each other with a kiss on each cheek.

## 2 Words to remember (2 minutes)

Learn these expressions. Conceal the German with the cover flap and test yourself.

**Guten Tag.** Hello/  
*goo-ten tahk* Good day.

**Guten Abend/Nacht.** Good evening/  
*goo-ten ah-bent/nukht* night.

**Bis bald/morgen.** See you soon/  
*biss balt/mor-gen* tomorrow.

**Auf Wiedersehen/  
Tschüss.** Goodbye.  
*owf vee-der-zay- (formal/  
en/tchews* informal)

Hallo!  
Hal-loe  
Hello!

**Cultural tip** In addition to proper names, all nouns start with a capital letter in German—for example, **der Tag** (the day), as in **Guten Tag** (good day).

## 3 In conversation: formal (3 minutes)



**Guten Tag. Ich heiße  
Martina Li.**  
*goo-ten tahk. ikh high-  
se mar-teen-a lee*

Hello. My name is  
Martina Li.



**Guten Tag. Michael Brand,  
freut mich.**  
*goo-ten tahk. mikh-ah-  
ail brant, froyt mikh*

Hello. Michael Brand,  
pleased to meet you.



**Freut mich.**  
*froyt mikh*  
Pleased to meet you.

## 4 Put into practice (3 minutes)



Join in this conversation. Read the German beside the pictures on the left and then follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.

**Guten Abend, Herr Gohl.** **Guten Abend.**  
*goo-ten ah-bent, hair goel* *goo-ten ah-bent*

Good evening, Mr. Gohl.

Say: Good evening.



**Ich heie Ilse Gerlach.** **Freut mich.**  
*ikh high-se ilse gair-lakh.* *froyt mikh*

My name is Ilse Gerlach.

Say: Pleased to meet you.

## 5 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words. Read them aloud several times and try to memorize them. Conceal the German with the cover flap and test yourself.

What's your name? **Wie heien Sie?**  
*vee high-sen zee*

My name is Thomas. **Ich heie Thomas.**  
*ikh high-se toe-mass*

Pleased to meet you. **Freut mich.**  
*froyt mikh*

Thank you. **Danke.**  
*dun-ke*

## 6 In conversation: informal (3 minutes)



**Also, bis morgen?**  
*ull-zoe, biss mor-gen*

So, see you tomorrow?



**Ja, auf Wiedersehen.**  
*yah, owf vee-der-zay-en*

Yes, goodbye.



**Tschuss. Bis bald.**  
*tchews. biss balt*

Goodbye. See you soon.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "hello" and "goodbye" in German. (pp.8-9)

Now say "My name is...". (pp.8-9)

Say "Mr" and "Mrs". (pp.8-9)

# DIE VERWANDTEN Relatives

In German things are masculine, feminine, or neuter, taking a different form of "the" according to gender: **der** (masculine), **die** (feminine), and **das** (neuter). There is no easy way of knowing the gender of a word; you will have to memorize them individually.

## 2 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Look at the numbered family members in this scene and match them with the vocabulary list at the side. Read the German words aloud. Now, conceal the list with the cover flap and test yourself.

- 1 **der Großvater**  
dair groes-fah-ter
- 2 **der Bruder**  
dair broo-der
- 3 **die Schwester**  
dee shvess-ter
- 4 **der Vater**  
dair fah-ter
- 5 **die Mutter**  
dee moot-ter
- 6 **die Großmutter**  
dee groes-moot-ter
- 7 **der Sohn**  
dair zoen
- 8 **die Tochter**  
dee tokh-ter



**Conversational tip** In German the word **ein** (a/an) changes according to the gender of the noun—for example, **Ich habe eine Schwester** (I have a sister), but **Ich habe einen Sohn** (I have a son).

### 3 Words to remember: relatives (4 minutes)

**der Ehemann**  
dair ay-amunn  
husband

**die Ehefrau**  
dee ay-afrow  
wife



Germans commonly refer to their spouses as **mein Mann** (*my man*) or **meine Frau** (*my woman*). This is not impolite, but a shortened version of **mein Ehemann** and **meine Ehefrau**.

children	<b>die Kinder</b> dee kin-der
brother-in-law/ sister-in-law	<b>der Schwager/die Schwägerin</b> dair shvar-ger/ dee shvay-ge-rin
half-brother/ half-sister	<b>der Halbbruder/die Halbschwester</b> dair hulp-broo-der/ dee hulp-shvess-ter
stepson/stepdaughter	<b>der Stiefsohn/die Stieftochter</b> dair shteef-zohn/dee shteef-tokh-ter
stepfather/stepmother	<b>der Stiefvater/die Stiefmutter</b> dair shteef-fah-ter/dee shteef-moot-ter

**Ich bin verheiratet.**  
ikh bin fer-hye-rah-tet  
I'm married.

I have two sons. **Ich habe zwei Söhne.**  
ikh hah-be tsvie zer-ne.

### 4 Words to remember: numbers (3 minutes)

Memorize these words and then test yourself using the cover flap.

In German the plural is formed by adding an **en, e, er,** or **s** to the end of the word, as in **Frau/Frauen** (*woman/women*), **Tag/Tage** (*day/days*), **Mann/Männer** (*man/men*), **Auto/Autos** (*car/cars*). In many cases the main vowel changes to a vowel with an umlaut, as in **der Bruder/die Brüder** (*brother/brothers*). In others there is no change.

one	<b>eins</b> ients
two	<b>zwei</b> tsvie
three	<b>drei</b> drie
four	<b>vier</b> feer
five	<b>fünf</b> fewnf
six	<b>sechs</b> zeks
seven	<b>sieben</b> zee-ben
eight	<b>acht</b> akht
nine	<b>neun</b> noyn
ten	<b>zehn</b> tsayn

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

One sister.  
Three sons.  
Two brothers.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say the German for as many members of the family as you can. (pp.10-11)

Say "I have two sons." (pp.10-11)

# MEINE FAMILIE

## My family

There are two ways of saying you in German: **Sie** for people you have just met or don't know very well, and **du** for family and friends. There are also different words for *your* (see below). It is best to use **Sie** when you first meet someone and wait until he or she invites you to use **du**.

## 2 Words to remember (5 minutes)

The words for *my* and *your* change, depending on the gender and number of the word to which they relate.

**mein** my (with masculine  
*mine* or neuter)

**meine** my (with feminine)  
*mye-ne*

**meine** my (with plural)  
*mye-ne*

**dein** your (informal, with  
*dine* masculine or neuter)

**deine** your (informal, with  
*dye-ne* feminine)

**deine** your (informal, with  
*dye-ne* plural)

**Ihr** your (formal, with  
*eer* masculine or neuter)

**Ihre** your (formal, with  
*ee-re* feminine or plural)

**Das sind meine Eltern.**  
*duss zint mye-ne ell-tern*  
These are my parents.



## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



**Haben Sie Kinder?**  
*hah-ben zee kin-der*

Do you have any children?



**Ja, ich habe zwei Töchter.**  
*yah, ikh hah-be tsvie terk-ter*

Yes, I have two daughters.



**Hier sind meine Töchter.**  
**Und Sie?**  
*heer zint mye-ne terk-ter.*  
*oont zee*

These are my daughters.  
And you?

**Conversational tip** The most common way to ask a question in German is to invert the verb and the subject: **Sie haben** (you have) becomes **Haben Sie...?** (have you? or do you have?). Similarly, **Sie möchten Kaffee** (you want coffee) becomes **Möchten Sie Kaffee?** (Do you want coffee?).



#### 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)



Read these phrases aloud several times and try to memorize them. Conceal the German with the cover flap and test yourself.

Do you have any brothers? (formal) **Haben Sie Brüder?**  
*hah-ben zee brew-der*

Do you have any brothers? (informal) **Hast du Brüder?**  
*husst doo brew-der*



This is my husband. **Hier ist mein Mann.**  
*heer isst mine munn*

That's my wife. **Dort ist meine Frau.**  
*dort isst mye-ne frow*



Is that your sister? (formal) **Ist das Ihre Schwester?**  
*isst duss ee-re shvess-ter*

Is that your sister? (informal) **Ist das deine Schwester?**  
*isst duss dye-ne shvess-ter*

#### 5 Say it (2 minutes)



**Nein, aber ich habe einen Stiefsohn.**  
*nine, ah-ber ikh hah-be ie-nen shteef-zohn*

No, but I have a stepson.

Do you have any brothers and sisters? (formal)

Do you have any children? (informal)

I don't have any sisters.

This is my wife.



## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "See you soon."  
(pp.8-9)

Say "I am married"  
and "I have a wife."  
(pp.10-11 and pp.12-13)

# SEIN UND HABEN

## To be and to have

German verbs have more forms than English ones, so learn them carefully. The verbs **sein** (to be) and **haben** (to have) are used in many expressions, often differently from English. For example, in English you say *I'm hungry*, but in German you say **Ich habe Hunger** (literally, *I have hunger*).

## 2 Sein: to be (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with the different forms of **sein** (to be). Use the cover flaps to test yourself and, when you are confident, practice the sample sentences below.

**ich bin** I am  
*ikh bin*

**du bist** you are (informal,  
*doo bisst* singular)

**er/sie/es ist** he/she/it is  
*air/zee/ess ist*

**wir sind** we are  
*veer zint*

**ihr seid** you are (informal,  
*eer ziet* plural)

**sie sind/Sie sind** they are/you are  
*zee zint* (formal)



**Ich bin Engländerin.**  
*ikh bin ang-lan-darin*  
I'm English.

**Ich bin müde.** I'm tired.  
*ikh bin mew-de*

**Du bist/Sie sind** You're on time.  
**pünktlich.**  
*doo bisst/zee zint*  
**pewnkt-likh**

**Ist sie glücklich?** Is she happy?  
*isst zee glewk-likh*

**Wir sind Deutsche.** We're German.  
*veer zind doitche*





### 3 Haben (5 minutes)



**Haben Sie Brokkoli?**  
*hah-ben zee brokolee*

Do you have any broccoli?

Learn this verb and the sample sentences.  
Use the flap to test yourself.

I have	<b>ich habe</b> <i>ikh hah-be</i>
you have (informal, singular)	<b>du hast</b> <i>doo husst</i>
he/she/it has	<b>er/sie/es hat</b> <i>air/zee/ess hut</i>
we have	<b>wir haben</b> <i>veer hah-ben</i>
you have (informal, plural)	<b>ihr habt</b> <i>eer hahpt</i>
they have/you have (formal)	<b>sie haben/Sie haben</b> <i>zee hah-ben</i>



He has a meeting.

**Er hat eine  
Besprechung.**  
*air hut ie-ne  
be-shpre-khoong*



Do you have a cell phone?

**Haben Sie ein  
Smartphone?**  
*hah-ben zee ine smart-foh*



They have a half-brother.

**Sie haben einen  
Halbbruder.**  
*zee hah-ben ie-neh  
hulp-broo-der*

### 4 Negatives (4 minutes)

The most common way to make a sentence negative in German is to put **nicht** (not) in front of the word that is negated, much as in English: **Wir sind nicht verheiratet** (We are not married). Note the following special negative constructions: not a/not any becomes **kein/keine**, not ever/never becomes

**nie**, and not anywhere/nowhere becomes **nirgendwo**.



**das Fahrrad**  
*duss fahr-raht*  
bicycle

**Ich habe kein Auto.**  
*ikh hah-be kine ow-to*  
I don't have a car.

I'm not tired. **Ich bin nicht müde.**  
*ikh bin nikht mew-de*

He's not married. **Er ist nicht verheiratet.**  
*air isst nikht  
fer-hye-rah-tet*

We don't have any children. **Wir haben keine Kinder.**  
*veer hah-ben kye-ne kin-der*

**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**1 How many?**

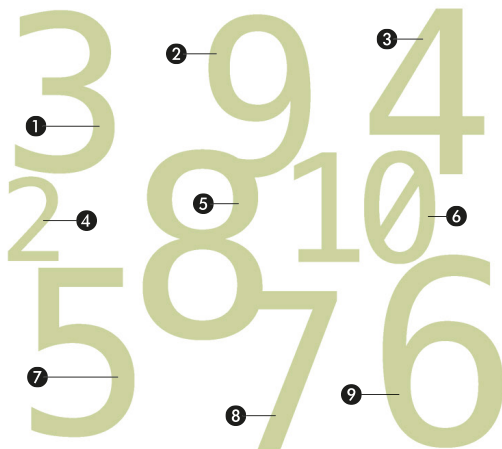
- 1 **drei**  
*drie*
- 2 **neun**  
*noyn*
- 3 **vier**  
*feer*
- 4 **zwei**  
*tsvie*
- 5 **acht**  
*akht*
- 6 **zehn**  
*tsayn*
- 7 **fünf**  
*fewnf*
- 8 **sieben**  
*zee-ben*
- 9 **sechs**  
*zeks*

# WIEDERHOLUNG

## Review and repeat

**1 How many?** (2 minutes)

Conceal the answers with the cover flap. Then say these numbers in German. Check to see if you remembered correctly.

**2 Hello**

- 1 **Guten Tag. Ich heiße...** [your name].  
*goo-ten tahk. ikh high-se...*
- 2 **Freut mich.**  
*froyt mikh*
- 3 **Ja, und ich habe zwei Söhne. Und Sie?**  
*yah, oont ikh hah-be tsvie zer-ne. Oont zee?*
- 4 **Auf Wiedersehen. Bis morgen.**  
*owf vee-der-zay-en. biss mor-gen*

**2 Hello** (4 minutes)

You meet someone in a formal situation. Join in the conversation, replying in German according to the English prompts.

**Guten Tag. Ich heiße Claudia.**

- 1 Answer the greeting and give your name.

**Das ist mein Mann, Norbert.**

- 2 Say "Pleased to meet you."

**Sind Sie verheiratet?**

- 3 Say "Yes, and I have two sons. And you?"

**Wir haben drei Töchter.**

- 4 Say "Goodbye. See you tomorrow."



**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**3 To have or be** (5 minutes)

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of **haben** (to have) or **sein** (to be). Check to see if you remembered the German correctly.

- 1 Ich \_\_\_\_ verheiratet.
- 2 Sie (she) \_\_\_\_ müde.
- 3 Wir \_\_\_\_ Deutsche.
- 4 \_\_\_\_ Sie eine Besprechung?
- 5 Sie (she) \_\_\_\_ eine Schwägerin.
- 6 Ich \_\_\_\_ kein Handy.
- 7 \_\_\_\_ du glücklich?
- 8 Das \_\_\_\_ mein Mann.

**3 To have or be**

- 1 bin  
bin
- 2 ist  
isst
- 3 sind  
zint
- 4 haben  
hah-ben
- 5 hat  
hut
- 6 habe  
hah-be
- 7 bist  
bisst
- 8 ist  
isst

**4 Family** (4 minutes)

Say the German for each of the numbered family members. Check to see if you remembered the German correctly.

**4 Family**

- 1 der Großvater  
dair groes-fah-ter
- 2 der Bruder  
dair broo-der
- 3 die Schwester  
dee shvess-ter
- 4 der Vater  
dair fah-ter
- 5 die Mutter  
dee moot-ter
- 6 die Großmutter  
dee groes-moot-ter
- 7 der Sohn  
dair zohn
- 8 die Tochter  
dee tokh-ter

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Count to ten.  
(pp.10-11)

Say "hello" and  
"goodbye." (pp.8-9)

Ask "Do you have a  
brother?" (pp.12-13)

# IM CAFÉ

## In the café

In a German **Café** the busiest time is the afternoon, when people stop for coffee and cake. Some savory dishes are also usually available, but the emphasis is on pastries and cakes.

**der Zucker**  
*dair tsook-ker*  
sugar

## 2 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with the words below. Then test yourself by hiding the German with the cover flap. Practice the words on the picture also.

**der Kaffee ohne Milch** black coffee  
*dair kuf-fay oh-ne milkh*

**der Tee mit Milch** tea with milk  
*dair tay mit milkh*

**das Gebäck** pastry  
*duss ge-beck*

**das Sandwich** sandwich  
*duss zent-vitch*



**der schwarze Tee**  
*dair shvar-tse tay*  
black tea



**Cultural tip** Coffee is always served with milk and sugar, but tea drinkers should specify if they want milk (**mit Milch**) or lemon (**mit Zitrone**).

## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



**Ich hätte gern eine Tasse Tee mit Milch.**  
*ikh het-te gainr ie-ne tuss-se tay mit milkh*

I would like a cup of tea with milk, please.



**Sonst noch etwas?**  
*zonsst nokh et-vuss*

Anything else?



**Haben Sie Kuchen?**  
*hah-ben zee koo-khen*

Do you have any cake?

## 4 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

ein Stück Kuchen  
ine shtewck  
koo-khen  
slice of cake



I'd like a cup of coffee,  
please.

Ich hätte gern eine  
Tasse Kaffee, bitte.  
ikh het-te gairn ie-ne  
tuss-se kuf-fay, bit-te



Anything else?

Sonst noch etwas?  
zonsst nokh et-vuss



Yes, a Danish pastry,  
please.

Ja, ein Teilchen, bitte.  
yah, ine tile-khen,  
bit-te



How much is that?

Was macht das?  
vuss mukht duss

der Kaffee  
dair kuf-fay  
(white) coffee



Ja, selbstverständlich.  
yah, zelpst-fer-shtend-likh

Yes, certainly.



Danke. Was macht das?  
dun-ke. vuss mukht duss

Thank you. How much  
is that?



Vier Euro, bitte.  
feer oy-roe, bit-te

Four euros, please.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

How do you say "I'd like"? (pp.18-19)

Say "I don't have a brother." (pp.14-15)

Is "der" masculine or feminine? When do you use "die"? (pp.10-11)

# IM RESTAURANT

## In the restaurant

There are many different eating places in Germany. A **Gaststätte** serves local or international dishes. In a **Gasthof** you'll get more home-style cooking. **Ratkeller**, in the basements of historic town halls, serve regional specialties. A **Weinstube** has local wine and snacks.

## 2 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Memorize these words. Conceal the German with the cover flap and then test yourself.

**die Speisekarte** menu  
*dee shpie-ze-kar-te*

**die Weinkarte** wine list  
*dee vine-kar-te*

**die Vorspeisen** appetizers  
*dee for-shpie-zen*

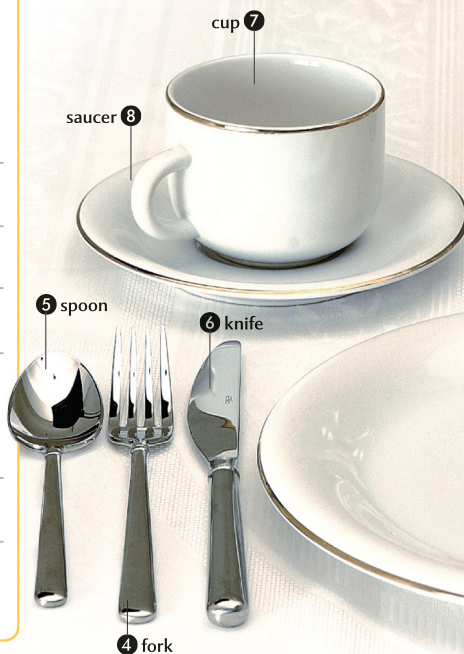
**die Hauptgerichte** main courses  
*dee howpt-ge-rikh-te*

**der Nachtisch** desserts  
*dair nahkh-tish*

**das Mittagessen** lunch  
*duss mit-tahks-ess-sen*

**das Abendessen** dinner  
*duss ah-bent-ess-sen*

**das Frühstück** breakfast  
*duss frew-shtewk*



## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



**Einen Tisch für vier Personen.**  
*ie-nen tish fewr feer pair-zoe-nen*

A table for four.



**Haben Sie reserviert?**  
*hah-ben zee re-zair-veert*

Do you have a reservation?



**Ja, auf den Namen Schmidt.**  
*yah, owf dayn nah-men shmitt*

Yes, in the name of Schmidt.

#### 4 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Look at the numbered items and match them with the vocabulary list at the side. Read the German words aloud. Now, conceal the list with the cover flap and test yourself.



- ① **das Glas**  
duss glahss
- ② **die Serviette**  
dee zair-vee-ett-te
- ③ **der Teller**  
dair tell-ler
- ④ **die Gabel**  
dee gah-bell
- ⑤ **der Löffel**  
dair lerfff-fel
- ⑥ **das Messer**  
duss mess-ser
- ⑦ **die Tasse**  
dee tuss-se
- ⑧ **die Untertasse**  
dee unter-tuss-se

#### 5 Useful phrases (2 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap to conceal the German.

What do you have for dessert?

**Was haben Sie zum Nachtisch?**  
vuss hah-ben zee  
tsoom nahkh-tish

May I have the check, please?

**Könnte ich bitte die Rechnung haben.**  
kern-te ikh bit-te dee  
rekh-noong hah-ben



**Welchen Tisch möchten Sie?**  
vel-khen tish merkh-ten  
zee

Which table would you like?



**Am Fenster, bitte**  
um fens-ter, bit-te

Near the window, please.



**Selbstverständlich. Folgen Sie mir.**  
zelpst-fer-shtend-likh.  
fol-gen zee meer

Of course. Follow me.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

What are “breakfast,” “lunch,” and “dinner” in German? (pp.20-1)

Say “I,” “you” (informal, singular), “he,” “she,” “it,” “we,” “you” (formal), “they.” (pp.14-15)

# MÖGEN

## To want

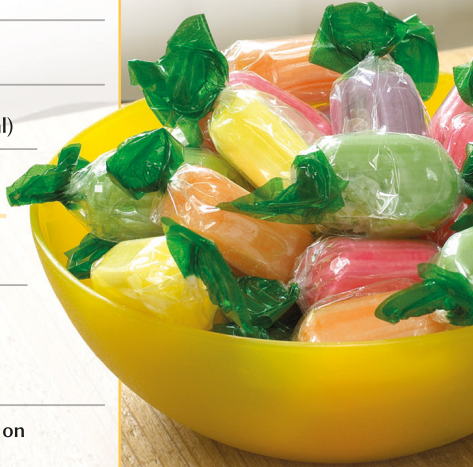
In this section, you will learn a verb, **mögen** (to want), which is essential to everyday conversation, as well as a useful polite expression, **ich hätte gern** (I would like). Remember to use this form when requesting something because **ich möchte** (I want) may sound too forceful.

## 2 Mögen: to want (6 minutes)

Say the different forms of **mögen** (to want) aloud and practice the sample sentences below. Use the cover flaps to test yourself.

<b>ich möchte</b> <i>ikh merkH-te</i>	I want
<b>du möchtest</b> <i>doo merkH-test</i>	you want (informal, singular)
<b>er/sie/es möchte</b> <i>air/zee/ess merkH-te</i>	he/she/it wants
<b>wir möchten</b> <i>veer merkH-ten</i>	we want
<b>ihr möchtet</b> <i>eer merkH-tet</i>	you want (informal, plural)
<b>sie möchten/Sie möchten</b> <i>zee merkH-ten</i>	they want/you want (formal)
<b>Möchtest du Wein?</b> <i>merkH-test doo vine</i>	Do you want some wine?
<b>Sie möchte ein neues Auto haben.</b> <i>zee merkH-te ine noy-es ow-to hah-ben</i>	She wants a new car.
<b>Wir möchten in Urlaub fahren.</b> <i>veer merkH-ten in oor-lowp fah-ren</i>	We want to go on vacation.

**Ich möchte Bonbons haben.**  
*ikh merkH-te bom-bongs hah-ben*  
I want some candy.



**Conversational tip** In German you don't need to say *some* as in *We want some ice pops* for **Wir möchten Eis am Stiel haben**. The phrase *some* is **ein paar**. It is generally used only when you want to imply some but not all, as in **Ich habe nur ein paar Bonbons gegessen**.



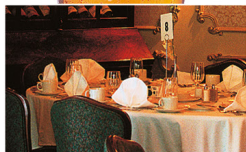


### 3 Polite requests (4 minutes)



It is polite to use the expression **ich hätte gern** (*I would like*) to explain what you would like.

I'd like a beer. **Ich hätte gern ein Bier.**  
*ikh het-te gairn ine beer*



I'd like a table for tonight. **Ich hätte gern einen Tisch für heute abend.**  
*ikh het-te gairn ie-nen tish fewr hoy-te ah-bent*



I'd like the menu. **Ich hätte gern die Speisekarte.**  
*ikh het-te gairn dee shpie-ze-kar-te*

### 4 Put into practice (4 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Read the German beside the pictures on the left and then follow the instructions to make your reply in German. Test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.

**Guten Abend. Haben Sie reserviert?**  
*goo-ten ah-bent. hah-ben zee re-zair-veert*

Good evening. Do you have a reservation?

Say: No, but I would like a table for three.

**Nein, aber ich hätte gern einen Tisch für drei Personen.**  
*nine, ah-ber ikh het-te gairn ie-nen tish fewr drie per-zoe-nen*

**Welchen Tisch möchten Sie?**  
*vel-khen tish merkh-ten zee*

Which table would you like?

Say: Near the window, please.



## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "I am tired."  
(pp.14-15)

Ask "Do you have  
pastries?" (pp.18-19)

Say "I'd like a black  
coffee." (pp.18-19)

# DIE GERICHTE Dishes

Germany is famous for its sausages and meat dishes as well as its sauerkraut and dumplings. Today's restaurants, however, offer a wide selection of international dishes. Although traditionally the cuisine is meat-based, many restaurants now offer vegetarian dishes.

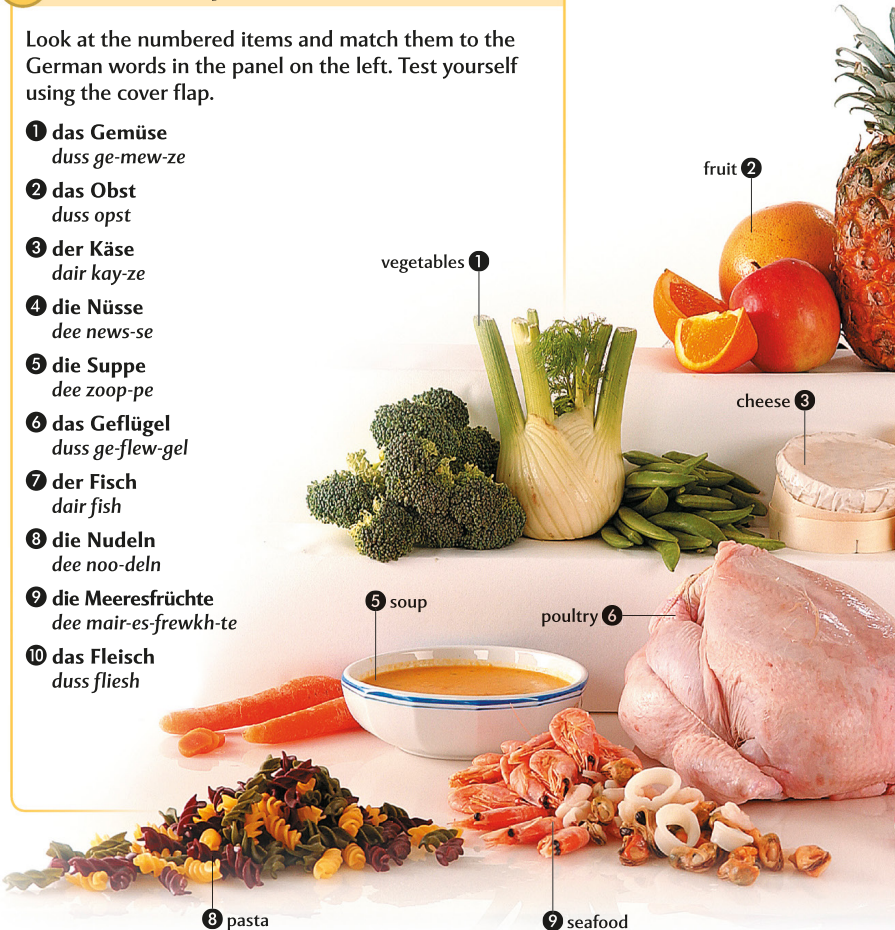


**Cultural tip** In most restaurants at lunchtime you will usually have the choice of eating a **Tagesgericht** (*dish of the day*) or of choosing **à la carte** from the menu.

## 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Look at the numbered items and match them to the German words in the panel on the left. Test yourself using the cover flap.

- 1 das Gemüse  
duss ge-mew-ze
- 2 das Obst  
duss opst
- 3 der Käse  
dair kay-ze
- 4 die Nüsse  
dee news-se
- 5 die Suppe  
dee zoop-pe
- 6 das Geflügel  
duss ge-flew-gel
- 7 der Fisch  
dair fish
- 8 die Nudeln  
dee noo-deln
- 9 die Meeresfrüchte  
dee mair-es-frewkh-te
- 10 das Fleisch  
duss flesh



### 3 Words to remember: cooking methods (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and then test yourself.

fried	<b>gebraten</b> <i>ge-brah-ten</i>
grilled	<b>gegrillt</b> <i>ge-grillt</i>
roasted	<b>geröstet</b> <i>ge-rerss-tet</i>
boiled	<b>gekocht</b> <i>ge-kokht</i>
steamed	<b>gedämpft</b> <i>ge-dempft</i>
rare	<b>blutig</b> <i>bloo-tikh</i>

Ich hätte mein Steak  
gern durchgebraten.  
*ikh het-te mine shtayk*  
*gairn doorkh-ge-brah-ten*  
I'd like my steak  
well done.

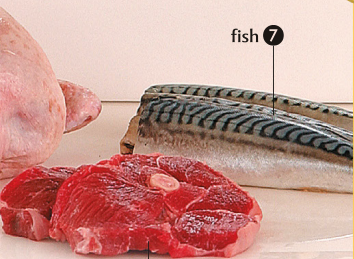


### 4 Say it (2 minutes)

What is **Sauerbraten**?  
I'm allergic to seafood.  
I'd like a fruit juice.



nuts **4**



fish **7**

**10** meat

### 5 Words to remember: drinks (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words.

water	<b>das Wasser</b> <i>duss vuss-ser</i>
sparkling water	<b>das Wasser mit Kohlensäure</b> <i>duss vuss-ser mit koe-len-zoy-re</i>
still water	<b>das Wasser ohne Kohlensäure</b> <i>duss vuss-ser oe-ne koe-len-zoy-re</i>
wine	<b>der Wein</b> <i>dair vine</i>
fruit juice	<b>der Fruchtsaft</b> <i>dair frookht-zufft</i>

### 6 Useful phrases (2 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself.

I am a vegetarian. **Ich bin Vegetarier/  
Vegetarierin.**  
*ikh bin vay-ge-tah-ree-er/vay-ge-tah-ree-er-in*

I am allergic to nuts. **Ich bin allergisch gegen Nüsse.**  
*ikh bin ull-lair-gish gay-gen news-se*

What is "Spätzle"? **Was ist "Spätzle"?**  
*vuss isst shpets-le*

## Antworten

Answers (Cover with flap)

# WIEDERHOLUNG

## Review and repeat

### 1 What food?

- 1 die Nüsse  
*dee news-se*
- 2 die Meeresfrüchte  
*dee mair-es-frewkh-te*
- 3 das Fleisch  
*duss flesh*
- 4 der Zucker  
*dair tsook-ker*
- 5 das Glas  
*duss glahss*

### 1 What food? (4 minutes)

Name the numbered items.



### 2 This is my...

- 1 Das ist mein Ehemann.  
*duss ist mine ay-emunn*
- 2 Hier ist meine Tochter.  
*heer ist mye-ne tokh-ter*
- 3 Meine Kinder sind müde.  
*mye-ne kin-der zint mew-de*

### 2 This is my... (4 minutes)

Say these phrases in German. Use **mein** or **meine**.

- 1 This is my husband.
- 2 Here is my daughter.
- 3 My children are tired.



### 3 I'd like...

- 1 Ich hätte gern Kuchen.  
*ikh het-te gairn koo-khen*
- 2 Ich hätte gern einen schwarzen Tee.  
*ikh het-te gairn ie-nen shvar-tsen tay*
- 3 Ich hätte gern einen Kaffee.  
*ikh het-te gairn ie-nen kuf-fay*

### 3 I'd like... (3 minutes)

Say you'd like the following:





## Antworten

Answers (Cover with flap)

### 1 What food?

- 6 die Nudeln  
*dee noo-deln*
- 7 das Messer  
*duss mess-ser*
- 8 der Käse  
*dair kay-ze*
- 9 die Serviette  
*dee zair-vee-ett-te*
- 10 das Bier  
*duss beer*

### 4 Restaurant (4 minutes)

You arrive at a restaurant. Join in the conversation, replying in German following the English prompts.

**Guten Tag.**

- 1 Ask for a table for six.

**Raucher oder Nichtraucher?**

- 2 Say: nonsmoking.

**Folgen Sie mir, bitte.**

- 3 Ask for the menu.

**Möchten Sie die Weinkarte?**

- 4 Say: No. Sparkling water, please.

**Bitte schön.**

- 5 Say: I don't have a glass.



### 4 Restaurant

- 1 **Guten Tag. Ich hätte gern einen Tisch für sechs Personen.**  
*goo-ten tahk. ikh het-te gainr ie-nen tish fewr zeks pair-zoe-nen*
- 2 **Nichtraucher.**  
*nikht-row-kher*
- 3 **Die Speisekarte, bitte.**  
*dee shpie-ze-kar-te, bit-te*
- 4 **Nein. Wasser mit Kohlensäure, bitte.**  
*nine. vuss-ser mit koe-len-zoy-re, bit-te*
- 5 **Ich habe kein Glas.**  
*ikh hah-be kine glahss*

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "he is" and "they are."  
(pp.14-15)

Say "he is not" and "they are not."  
(pp.14-15)

What is German for "the children"? (pp.10-11)

# DIE TAGE UND DIE MONATE

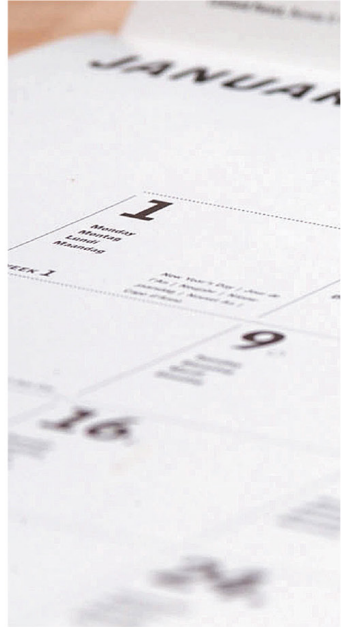
## Days and months

Days of the week and months are all masculine. **Die Woche** (week) is feminine. You use **im** with months: **im April** (in April), and **am** with days: **am Montag** (on Monday). You also use **am** with **Wochenende** (weekend).

## 2 Words to remember: days of the week (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

<b>Montag</b> <i>moen-tahk</i>	Monday
<b>Dienstag</b> <i>deens-tahk</i>	Tuesday
<b>Mittwoch</b> <i>mit-vokh</i>	Wednesday
<b>Donnerstag</b> <i>don-ners-tahk</i>	Thursday
<b>Freitag</b> <i>frie-tahk</i>	Friday
<b>Samstag</b> <i>zumss-tahk</i>	Saturday
<b>Sonntag</b> <i>zonn-tahk</i>	Sunday
<b>heute</b> <i>hoy-te</i>	today
<b>morgen</b> <i>mor-gen</i>	tomorrow
<b>gestern</b> <i>guess-tern</i>	yesterday



**Morgen ist Montag.**  
*mor-gen isst moen-tahk*  
Tomorrow is Monday.

## 3 Useful phrases: days (2 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

**Die Besprechung ist am Dienstag.**  
*dee be-shpre-khoong isst am deens-tahk*

The meeting is on Tuesday.

**Ich arbeite sonntags.**  
*ikh ar-bie-te zonn-tahks*

I work on Sundays.



**4 Words to remember: months** (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.



**Ostern ist im April.**  
oess-tairn isst im ah-prill  
Easter is in April.



**Weihnachten ist im Dezember.**  
vie-nahkh-ten isst im day-tsem-bair  
Christmas is in December.

January	<b>Januar</b> yunn-oo-ahr
February	<b>Februar</b> fay-broo-ahr
March	<b>März</b> mairts
April	<b>April</b> ah-prill
May	<b>Mai</b> mie
June	<b>Juni</b> yoo-nee
July	<b>Juli</b> yoo-lee
August	<b>August</b> ow-goosst
September	<b>September</b> zep-tem-bair
October	<b>Oktober</b> ok-toe-bair
November	<b>November</b> noe-ve-m-bair
December	<b>Dezember</b> day-tsem-bair
month	<b>der Monat</b> dair moenat
day	<b>der Tag</b> dair tahk

**5 Useful phrases: months** (2 minutes)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

My children are on vacation in August. **Meine Kinder haben im August Ferien.**  
mye-ne kin-der hah-ben im ow-goosst fay-ree-en



My birthday is in June. **Mein Geburtstag ist im Juni.**  
mine ge-boorts-tahk isst im yoo-nee

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Count in German from 1 to 10. (pp.10-11)

Say "I have a reservation." (pp.20-1)

Say "The meeting is on Wednesday." (pp.28-9)

# DIE ZEIT UND DIE ZAHLEN

## Time and numbers

Germans use the 12-hour clock in everyday conversation and the 24-hour clock in official contexts such as timetables. Note that in German, five-thirty is expressed as **halb sechs** (literally, *half six*).

## 2 Words to remember: time (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words.

**ein Uhr** one o'clock  
*ine oor*

**fünf nach eins** five after one  
*fewnf nahkh ients*

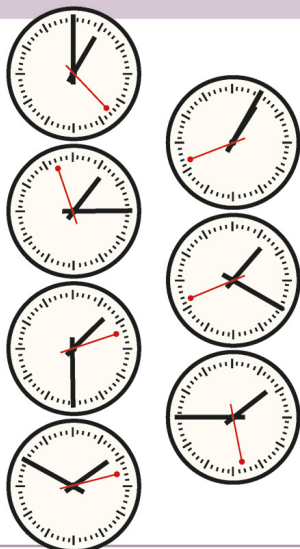
**Viertel nach eins** quarter after one  
*feer-tel nahkh ients*

**halb zwei** one-thirty  
*hulp tsvie*

**ein Uhr zwanzig** twenty after one  
*ine oor tsvun-tsik*

**Viertel vor zwei** quarter to two  
*feer-tel for tsvie*

**zehn Minuten vor zwei** ten to two  
*tsayn mee-noo-ten for tsvie*



## 3 Useful phrases (2 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

**Wie spät ist es?** What time is it?  
*vee shpayt issst es*

**Wann möchten Sie  
frühstücken?** What time do you  
want breakfast?  
*vunn merkh-ten zee  
frew-shtewk-ken*

**Die Besprechung ist  
um 12 Uhr.** The meeting is  
at noon.  
*dee be-shpre-khoong  
isst oom tsverlf oor*





**4 Words to remember: higher numbers** (6 minutes)

In German, units are said before tens, so 32 is **zweiunddreißig** (literally, two-plus-thirty). Because of this, Germans often write numbers starting at the right and working toward the left.



**Ich habe viele Bücher.**  
*ikh hah-be fee-le bew-kher*  
 I have many books.



**Das macht fünfundachtzig Euro.**  
*duss makht fewnf-oont-akh-tsik oy-roe*  
 That's eighty-five euros.

**5 Say it** (2 minutes)

twenty-five  
 sixty-eight  
 eighty-four  
 ninety-one  
 It's five to ten.  
 It's eleven-thirty.  
 What time is lunch?

eleven	<b>elf</b> elf
twelve	<b>zwölf</b> tsverlf
thirteen	<b>dreizehn</b> drie-tsayn
fourteen	<b>vierzehn</b> feer-tsayn
fifteen	<b>fünfzehn</b> fewnf-tsayn
sixteen	<b>sechzehn</b> zekh-tsayn
seventeen	<b>siebzehn</b> zeep-tsayn
eighteen	<b>achtzehn</b> akh-tsayn
nineteen	<b>neunzehn</b> noyn-tsayn
twenty	<b>zwanzig</b> tsvun-tsik
thirty	<b>dreißig</b> drie-ssik
forty	<b>vierzig</b> feer-tsik
fifty	<b>fünfzig</b> fewnf-tsik
sixty	<b>sechzig</b> zekh-tsik
seventy	<b>siebzig</b> zeep-tsik
eighty	<b>achtzig</b> akh-tsik
ninety	<b>neunzig</b> noyn-tsik
hundred	<b>hundert</b> hoon-dairt
three hundred	<b>dreihundert</b> drie-hoon-dairt
one thousand	<b>tausend</b> tow-zent
ten thousand	<b>zehntausend</b> tsayn-tow-zent
two hundred thousand	<b>zweihunderttausend</b> tsvie-hoon-dairt-tow-zent
one million	<b>eine Million</b> ie-ne mill-ee-oen

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say the days of the week.  
(pp.28-9)

Say "It's three o'clock."  
(pp.30-1)

What's the German for  
"today," "tomorrow," and  
"yesterday"? (pp.28-9)

# DIE TERMINE

## Appointments

Business in Germany is generally conducted more formally than in the US. Business associates generally call each other by their title and last name and use the formal form of *you*, **Sie**. Appointments are usually fixed using the 24-hour clock, **fünfzehn Uhr** (3 pm).

**Willkommen.**  
*vil-komm-men*  
Welcome.

## 2 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself.

<b>Können wir uns morgen treffen?</b> <i>kernen veer oons mor-gen treff-fen</i>	Can we meet tomorrow?
<b>Mit wem?</b> <i>mit vaym</i>	With whom?
<b>Wann sind Sie frei?</b> <i>vunn zint zee frie</i>	When are you free?
<b>Es tut mir Leid, ich bin beschäftigt.</b> <i>es toot meer liet, ikh bin be-sheff-tikht</i>	I'm sorry, I'm busy.
<b>Wie wär's mit Donnerstag?</b> <i>vee vairs mit don-ners-tahk</i>	How about Thursday?
<b>Das passt mir gut.</b> <i>duss pusst meer goot</i>	That's good for me.



der  
**Händedruck**  
*dair hen-de-drook*  
handshake

## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



**Guten Tage. Ich habe einen Termin.**  
*goo-ten tahk. ikh hah-be ie-nen terr-meen*

Hello. I have an appointment.



**Mit wem, bitte?**  
*mit vaym, bit-te*

With whom, please?



**Mit Dieter Frenger.**  
*mit dee-ter fren-ger*

With Dieter Frenger.

**4 Put into practice** (5 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Cover up the text on the right and say the answering part of the dialogue in German. Check your answers and repeat if necessary.



**Können wir uns am  
Donnerstag treffen?**  
*kernen veer oons am  
don-ners-tahk treff-fen*  
Shall we meet  
Thursday?

**Es tut mir Leid, ich  
bin beschäftigt.**  
*es toot meer liet, ikh  
bin be-sheff-tikht*

Say: Sorry, I'm busy.



**Wann sind Sie frei?**  
*vunn zint zee frie*  
When are you free?

**Dienstag Nachmittag.**  
*deens-tahk  
nahkh-mit-tahk*

Say: Tuesday  
afternoon.



**Das passt mir gut.**  
*duss pusst meer goot*  
That's good for me.

**Um wieviel Uhr?**  
*oom vee-feel oor*

Ask: At what time?



**Um sechzehn Uhr,  
wenn es Ihnen passt.**  
*oom zekh-tsayn oor,  
venn ess ee-nen pusst*  
At 16:00 hours, if  
that's good for you.

**Das passt mir gut.**  
*duss pusst meer goot*

Say: It's good for me.



**Sehr gut. Um wieviel Uhr?**  
*zair goot. oom vee-feel  
oor*

Fine. What time?



**Um fünfzehn Uhr, aber  
ich bin etwas verspätet.**  
*oom fevnf-tsayn oor,  
ah-ber ikh bin et-vuss  
fer-shpay-tet*

At 15:00 hours, but  
I'm a little late.



**Kein Problem. Setzen  
Sie sich, bitte.**  
*kine pro-blaym. zet-sen  
zee zikh, bit-te*

Don't worry. Sit down,  
please.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "I'm sorry." (pp.32-3)

What is the German for "I'd like an appointment?" (pp.32-3)

Ask "with whom?" in German. (pp.32-3)

# AM TELEFON

## On the telephone

Emergency phone numbers are: **Polizei** (police) 110, **Feuerwehr** (fire service), and **Rettungsdienst** (ambulance) 112. Directory enquiries is 118 33 for inland numbers, 118 34 for abroad, and 118 37 for an English-speaking service.

## 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the German.

- 1 das Ladegerät  
duss lah-de-ge-rayt
- 2 das Telefon  
duss tay-lay-foen
- 3 der Anrufbeantworter  
dair un-roof-bay-unt-vor-ter
- 4 die Kopfhörer  
dee kopf-her-er
- 5 das Smartphone  
duss smart-foen
- 6 die SIM-Karte  
dee seem-kar-te



## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



Hallo. Elke Rubin am Apparat.  
hul-lo. el-ke roo-been umm up-pa-raht

Hello. Elke Rubin speaking.



Guten Tag. Ich möchte bitte Peter Harnisch sprechen.  
goo-ten tahk. ikh merk-h-te bit-te peeter har-neesh shpre-khen

Hello. I'd like to speak to Peter Harnisch.



Mit wem spreche ich?  
mit vaym shpre-khe ikh

Who's calling?



SIM card 6

**Ich möchte eine SIM-Karte kaufen.**  
*ikh merk-h-te ie-ne seem-kar-te kow-fen*  
 I'd like to buy a SIM card.



3 answering machine

**5 Say it (2 minutes)**

I'd like to speak to Mr. Braun.

Hello, Gaby. Meyer speaking.

**4 Useful phrases (4 minutes)**

Learn these phrases. Then test yourself using the cover flap.



I'd like the number for Monika.

**Ich möchte Monika's Nummer bitte.**  
*ikh merk-h-te monikas num-mer bit-te*



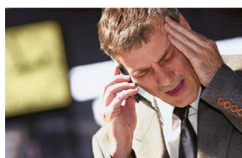
I'd like to speak to Rita Wolbert.

**Ich möchte mit Rita Wolbert sprechen.**  
*ikh merk-h-te mit ree-ta vol-ber-t shpre-khen*



Can I leave a message?

**Kann ich eine Nachricht hinterlassen?**  
*kunn ikh ie-ne nahkh-rikht hin-ter-luss-sen*



Sorry, I have the wrong number.

**Es tut mir Leid, ich habe mich verwählt.**  
*ess toot meer liet, ikh hah-be mikh fer-vaylt*



**Mit Norbert Lorenz von der Druckerei Knickmann.**  
*mit nor-ber-t loe-rents fon dair drook-er-ie knick-munn*

Norbert Lorenz of Knickmann Printers.



**Es tut mir Leid. Es ist besetzt.**  
*ess toot meer liet. ess iss-t be-zetzt*

I'm sorry. The line is busy.



**Würden Sie ihn bitten, mich anzurufen?**  
*vevr-den see een bit-ten, mikh un-tsoo-roo-fen*

Can he call me back, please?

## Antworten

Answers (Cover with flap)

# WIEDERHOLUNG

## Review and repeat

## 1 Sums

- 1 sechzehn  
zekh-tsayn
- 2 neununddreißig  
noyn-oont-drie-ssik
- 3 dreiundfünfzig  
drie-oont-fewnf-tsik
- 4 vierundsiebzig  
feer-oont-zeep-tsik
- 5 neunundneunzig  
noyn-oont-noyn-tsik
- 6 einundvierzig  
ine-oont-feer-tsik

## 1 Sums (4 minutes)

Say the answers to these sums aloud in German. Then check to see if you remembered correctly.

- 1  $10 + 6 = ?$
- 2  $14 + 25 = ?$
- 3  $66 - 13 = ?$
- 4  $40 + 34 = ?$
- 5  $90 + 9 = ?$
- 6  $46 - 5 = ?$

## 3 Telephones (3 minutes)

What are the numbered items in German?



## 2 I want...

- 1 möchten  
merkh-ten
- 2 möchte  
merkh-te
- 3 möchten  
merkh-ten
- 4 möchtest  
merkh-test
- 5 möchte  
merkh-te
- 6 möchte  
merkh-te

## 2 I want... (3 minutes)

Fill the gaps with the correct form of **mögen** (to want).

- 1 \_\_\_\_ Sie einen Kaffee?
- 2 Sie (singular) \_\_\_\_ in Urlaub fahren.
- 3 Wir \_\_\_\_ einen Tisch für drei Personen.
- 4 Du \_\_\_\_ ein Bier.
- 5 Ich \_\_\_\_ Bonbons.
- 6 Er \_\_\_\_ Obst.



**Antworten**

*Answers* (Cover with flap)

**3** **Telephones**

- 1 das Smartphone  
das smart-fohn
- 2 die SIM-Karte  
dee seem-kar-te
- 3 der  
Anrufbeantworter  
dair un-roof-bay-  
unt-vor-ter
- 4 das Telefon  
duss tay-lay-foen
- 5 die Kopfhörer  
dee kopf-her-er



**4** **When?** (2 minutes)

What do these sentences mean?

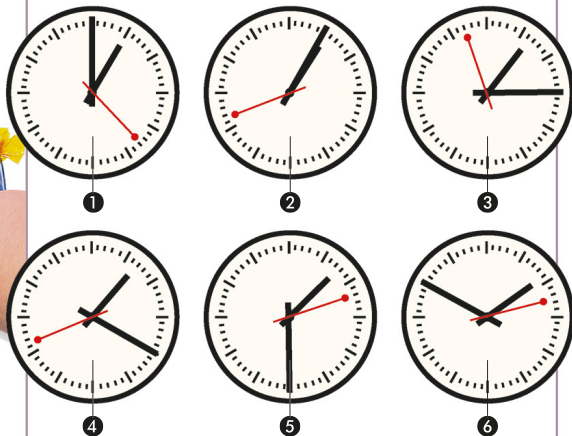
- 1 Ich habe einen Termin am Montag, den zwanzigsten Mai.
- 2 Mein Geburtstag ist im September.
- 3 Ich arbeite freitags.
- 4 Sie arbeiten nicht im August.

**4** **When?**

- 1 I have an appointment on Monday, May 20.
- 2 My birthday is in September.
- 3 I work on Fridays.
- 4 They don't work in August.

**5** **Time** (3 minutes)

Say these times in German.



**5** **Time**

- 1 ein Uhr  
ine oor
- 2 fünf nach eins  
fewnf nahkh ients
- 3 Viertel nach eins  
feer-tel nahkh ients
- 4 zwanzig Minuten nach eins  
tsvun-tsik mee-noo-ten nahkh ients
- 5 halb zwei  
hulp tsvie
- 6 zehn Minuten vor zwei (Uhr)  
tsayn mee-noo-ten for tsvie (oor)

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Count to 100 in tens.  
(pp.10-11, pp.30-1)

Ask "At what time?"  
(pp.32-3)

Say "One-thirty."  
(pp.30-1)

# AM FAHRKARTENSCHALTER At the ticket office

On German trains, children under the age of four travel free, and children from 4 to 11 years old pay half fare. There are also other concessions—for example, for senior citizens, groups, and weekend travel.

## 2 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Learn these words and then test yourself.

**der Bahnhof** station  
*dair bahn-hoef*

**der Zug** train  
*dair tsook*

**der Fahrplan** schedule  
*dair fahr-plahn*

**die Fahrkarte** ticket  
*dee fahr-kar-te*

**eine einfache Fahrkarte** one-way ticket  
*ie-ne ine-fa-khe fahr-kar-te*

**eine Rückfahrkarte** round-trip ticket  
*ie-ne rewck-fahr-kar-te*

**erster/zweiter Klasse** first class/  
second class  
*airs-ter/tsvie-ter kluss-se*

der Bahnsteig  
*dair bahn-shtiek*  
platform

das Schild  
*duss shilt*  
sign



Der Bahnhof ist überfüllt.  
*dair bahn-hoef isst ew-ber-fewllt*  
The station is crowded.

## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



Zwei Fahrkarten nach Berlin, bitte.  
*tsvie fahr-kar-ten nahkh bair-leen, bit-te*

Two tickets to Berlin, please.



Rückfahrkarten?  
*rewck-fahr-kar-ten*  
Round-trip?



Ja. Muss ich die Sitze reservieren?  
*yah. mooss ikh dee zit-se re-zair-vee-ren*

Yes. Do I need to reserve seats?



## 4 Useful phrases (5 minutes)



**Der Zug hat zehn Minuten Verspätung.**  
*dair tsook hut tsayn mee-noo-ten fer-shpay-toong*  
 The train is ten minutes late.

**der Fahrgast**  
*dair fahr-gust*  
 passenger

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

How much is a ticket to Cologne?

**Was kostet eine Fahrkarte nach Köln?**  
*vuss kos-tet ie-ne fahr-karte nahkh kerln*

Can I pay by credit card?

**Kann ich mit Kreditkarte zahlen?**  
*kunn ikh mit kray-deet-karte tсах-len*

Do I have to change trains?

**Muss ich umsteigen?**  
*mooss ikh oomm-shtie-gen*

Which platform does the train leave from?

**Von welchem Bahnsteig fährt der Zug ab?**  
*fon vel-khem bahn-shtiek fairt dair tsook up*

Are there any discounts?

**Gibt es Ermäßigungen?**  
*gaupt ess er-mays-si-goong-en*

What time does the train to Dresden leave?

**Wann fährt der Zug nach Dresden ab?**  
*vunn fairt dair tsook nahkh dres-den up*

## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Which platform does the train to Leipzig leave from?

Three round-trip tickets to Hamburg, please.

**Cultural tip** Most stations have automatic ticket machines (**Fahrkartenautomaten**). If you are in a hurry, you can buy tickets on the train, but you won't be able to get any discounts.



**Nein. Vierzig Euro, bitte.**  
*nine. feer-tsik oy-roe, bit-te*  
 No. Forty euros, please.



**Nehmen Sie Kreditkarten?**  
*nay-men zee kray-deet-kar-ten*  
 Do you take credit cards?



**Ja. Der Zug fährt auf Bahnsteig zehn ab.**  
*yah. dair tsook fairt owf bahn-shtiek tsayn up*

Yes. The train leaves from platform ten.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "train" in German.  
(pp.38-9)

What does "von welchem Bahnsteig fährt der Zug ab?" mean?  
(pp.38-9)

Ask "When are you free?" (pp.32-3)

# GEHEN UND NEHMEN

## To go and to take

**Gehen** (to go) and **nehmen** (to take) are essential verbs in German and form part of many useful expressions. Note that these verbs are not always used in the same way as in English and you need to learn phrases individually.

## 2 Gehen: to go (6 minutes)

Say the different forms of **gehen** (to go) aloud. Use the cover flaps to test yourself and, when you are confident, practice the sample sentences below.

**ich gehe** I go  
*ikh gay-e*

**du gehst** you go (informal, singular)  
*doo gayst*

**er/sie/es geht** he/she/it goes  
*air/zee/ess gayt*

**wir gehen** we go  
*veer gay-en*

**ihr geht** you go (informal, plural)  
*eer gayt*

**sie gehen/Sie gehen** they go/you go (formal)  
*zee gay-en*

**Wo gehen Sie hin?** Where are you going?  
*voe gay-en zee hin*

**Ich gehe nach Bonn.** I'm going to Bonn.  
*ikh gay-e nahkh bonn*

**Wie geht es Ihnen?** How are you?  
*vee gayt ess ee-nen*



**Ich gehe zum Brandenburger Tor.**  
*ikh gay-e tsoom brun-den-boor-ger tor*  
I'm going to the Brandenburg Gate.



**Conversational tip** German uses the same verb form for both *I go* and *I am going*. There is no equivalent of the English present continuous tense, which uses the *-ing* ending. For example, **Ich gehe nach Hamburg** means both *I am going to Hamburg* and *I go to Hamburg*. The same is true of other verbs: **Ich nehme den Zug** (*I am taking the train/ I take the train*).

### 3 Nehmen: to take (6 minutes)

Say the different forms of **nehmen** (to take) aloud and then practice the sample sentences below. Use the cover flaps to test yourself.



**Ich nehme die Straßenbahn jeden Tag.**  
*ikh nay-me dee shtrahsen-bahn yay-den tahk*  
 I take the tram every day.

**ich nehme** I take  
*ikh nay-me*

**du nimmst** you take (informal, singular)  
*doo nimmst*

**er/sie/es nimmt** he/she/it takes  
*air/zee/ess nimmt*

**wir nehmen** we take  
*veer nay-men*

**ihr nehmt** you take (informal, plural)  
*eer naymt*

**sie nehmen/Sie nehmen** they take/you take (formal)  
*zee nay-men*



**Ich möchte kein Taxi nehmen.**  
*ikh merkh-te kine tuck-see nay-men*  
 I don't want to take a taxi.



**Nehmen Sie die erste Straße links.**  
*nay-men zee dee airs-te shtrahs-se links*  
 Take the first left.



**Er nimmt den Rehbraten.**  
*air nimmt dayn ray-brah-ten*  
 He'll have the roast venison.

### 4 Put into practice (2 minutes)



Cover the text on the right and complete the dialogue in German.

**Wo gehen Sie hin?** **Ich gehe zum Bahnhof.**  
*voe gay-en zee hin* *ikh gay-e tsoom bahn-hoef*  
 Where are you going?

Say: I'm going to the station.



**Möchten Sie die U-Bahn nehmen?** **Nein, wir wollen den Bus nehmen.**  
*merkh-ten zee dee oo-bahn nay-men* *nine. veer vol-len dayn booss nay-men*  
 Do you want to take the metro?

Do you want to take the metro?

Say: No, we want to go by bus.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Ask "Where are you going?" (pp.40-1)

Say "I'm going to the station."  
(pp.40-1)

Say "fruit" and "cheese." (pp.24-5)

# TAXI, BUS UND BAHN

## Public transportation

The larger towns have *underground trains (U-Bahn)*. Many also have *overground trams (Straßenbahn)* or *express trains (S-Bahn)*. In most cases you need to buy and validate your ticket before you start the journey.

## 2 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words.

<b>der Bus</b> <i>dair booss</i>	bus (local)
<b>der Überlandbus</b> <i>dair ew-ber-lunt-booss</i>	bus (long-distance)
<b>der Busbahnhof</b> <i>dair booss-bahn-hoef</i>	bus station
<b>die Bushaltestelle</b> <i>dee booss-hal-te-shtel-le</i>	bus stop
<b>der Fahrpreis</b> <i>dair fahr-priess</i>	fare
<b>das Taxi</b> <i>duss tuck-see</i>	taxi
<b>der Taxistand</b> <i>dair tuck-see-shtunt</i>	taxi stand
<b>die U-Bahnstation</b> <i>dee oo-bahn-shta-tsee-oen</i>	subway station



**Hält der Bus Nummer  
hundertzwanzig hier?**  
*helt dair booss noom-mer  
hoon-dairt-tsvun-tsik heer*  
Does the Route 120  
bus stop here?

## 3 In conversation: taxi (2 minutes)



**Zum Flughafen, bitte.**  
*tsoom flook-hah-fen,  
bit-te*

The airport, please.



**Jawohl, kein Problem.**  
*yah-voel. kine pro-blaym*

Yes, no problem.



**Können Sie mich bitte  
hier absetzen?**

*ker-nen zee mikh bit-te  
heer up-zet-sen*

Can you drop me  
here, please?

## 4 Useful phrases (4 minutes)



Practice these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

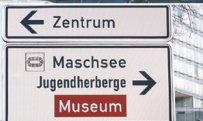
I would like a taxi to the cathedral.

**Ich hätte gern ein Taxi zum Dom.**  
*ikh het-te gairn ine tuck-see tsoom doem*



When is the next bus?

**Wann fährt der nächste Bus?**  
*vunn fairt dair nekh-ste booss*



How do you get to the museum?

**Wie komme ich zum Museum?**  
*vee kom-me ikh tsoom moo-zay-oom*



How long is the trip?

**Wie lange dauert die Fahrt?**  
*vee lan-ge dow-airt dee fahrt*

Please wait for me.

**Bitte warten Sie auf mich.**  
*bit-te vahr-ten zee owf mikh*

**Cultural tip** Taxis in Germany all have meters. You can hail a taxi in the street when the lights are switched on, board one at a taxi stand, or call for a taxi from your hotel or private address. Round up the fare to tip the driver.



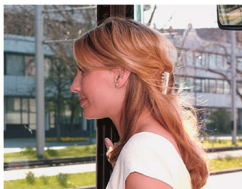
## 6 Say it (2 minutes)

Do you go near the train station?

The bus station, please.

When's the next coach to Kiel?

## 5 In conversation: bus (2 minutes)



**Fahren Sie in der Nähe vom Museum entlang?**  
*fah-ren zee in dair nay-e fom moo-zay-oom ent-lung*

Do you go near the museum?



**Ja. Das kostet achtzig Cent.**  
*yah. duss kos-tet akh-tsik tsent*

Yes. That's 80 cents.



**Können Sie mir sagen, wann wir da sind?**  
*ker-nen zee meer zah-gen, vunn veer dah zind*

Can you tell me when we arrive?

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

How do you say "I have...?" (pp.14-15)

Say "my father," "my sister," and "my parents." (pp.10-11 and pp.12-13)

Say "I'm going to Berlin." (pp.40-1)

# AUF DER STRASSE

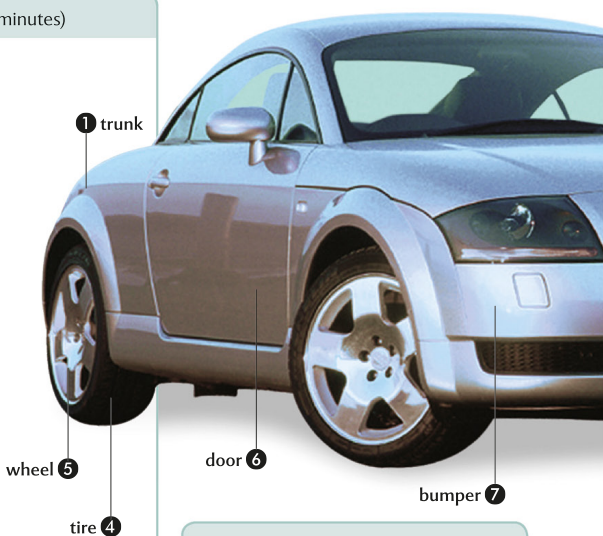
## On the road

German **Autobahnen** (expressways) are fast, but on many stretches there is now a speed limit of 80 mph (130 km/h). They are marked with the letter "A" on a blue sign, international expressways are "E" (**Europastraße**) on a green sign, and main roads "B" (**Bundesstraße**) on a white sign.

## 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the list below and then test yourself.

- 1 der Kofferraum  
dair kof-fer-rowm
- 2 die Windschutzscheibe  
dee vint-shoots-shie-be
- 3 die Motorhaube  
dee mo-tor-how-be
- 4 der Reifen  
dair rie-fen
- 5 das Rad  
duss raht
- 6 die Tür  
dee tewr
- 7 die Stoßstange  
dee shtoess-shtange
- 8 die Scheinwerfer  
dee shien-vair-fer



**Cultural tip** In Germany it is mandatory to carry with you in the car at all times your driver's license, car registration document, and a valid insurance certificate.

## 3 Road signs (2 minutes)



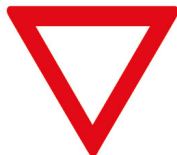
die Einbahnstraße  
dee ine-bahn-shtrah-se

One way



der Kreisverkehr  
dair kries-fer-kair

Roundabout



Vorfahrt achten  
for-fahrt akh-ten

Yield

## 4 Useful phrases (4 minutes)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

My turn signal isn't working. **Mein Blinker funktioniert nicht.**  
*mine blin-ker foonk-tsee-oe-neert nikht*

Fill it up, please. **Volltanken, bitte.**  
*foll-tan-ken, bit-te*

2 windshield

3 hood



headlights 8

## 6 Say it (1 minute)

My gearbox isn't working.  
I have a flat tire.

## 5 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words, and then test yourself using the flap.

gasoline **das Benzin**  
*duss ben-tseen*

diesel **der Diesel**  
*dair dee-zel*

oil **das Öl**  
*duss erl*

engine **der Motor**  
*dair moe-tor*

gearbox **das Getriebe**  
*duss ge-tree-be*

turn signal **der Blinker**  
*dair blin-ker*

flat tire **ein Platten**  
*ine plutt-ten*

exhaust **der Auspuff**  
*dair ows-pooff*

driver's license **der Führerschein**  
*dair few-rer-shien*



**die Vorfahrtstraße**  
*dee for-fahrt-shtrah-se*

Priority route



**Einfahrt verboten**  
*ine-fahrt fer-boe-ten*

No entry



**Parken verboten**  
*par-ken fer-boe-ten*

No parking

## Antworten

Answers (Cover with flap)

# WIEDERHOLUNG

## Review and repeat

### 1 Transportation

- 1 der Bus  
dair booss
- 2 das Taxi  
duss tuk-see
- 3 das Auto  
duss ow-toe
- 4 das Fahrrad  
duss fahr-raht
- 5 der Zug  
dair tsook

### 1 Transportation (3 minutes)

Name these forms of transportation in German.



### 2 Go and take

- 1 gehe  
gay-e
- 2 geht  
gayt
- 3 nehme  
nay-me
- 4 gehen  
gay-en
- 5 nehmen  
nay-men
- 6 gehen  
gay-en

### 2 Go and take (4 minutes)

Use the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- 1 Ich \_\_\_\_ zum Bahnhof. (gehen)
- 2 Wie \_\_\_\_ es dir? (gehen)
- 3 Ich \_\_\_\_ den Rehbraten. (nehmen)
- 4 Wir \_\_\_\_ nach Berlin.  
(gehen)
- 5 \_\_\_\_ Sie die erste  
Straße links. (nehmen)
- 6 Wo \_\_\_\_ Sie hin?  
(gehen)





**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)



3 car



4 bicycle

**3 Du or Sie?**

(4 minutes)

Use the correct form of you.

- 1 You are in a café. Ask "Do you have any cake?"
- 2 You are with a friend. Ask "Do you want a beer?"
- 3 A stranger approaches you at your company's reception desk. Ask "Do you have an appointment?"
- 4 You are on the bus. Ask "Do you go near the station?"
- 5 Ask your mother where she's going.

**3 Du or Sie?**

- 1 **Haben Sie Kuchen?**  
*hah-ben zee koo-khen*
- 2 **Möchtest du ein Bier?**  
*merkh-test doo ine beer*
- 3 **Haben Sie einen Termin?**  
*hah-ben zee ie-nen terr-meen*
- 4 **Fahren Sie in der Nähe vom Bahnhof entlang?**  
*fah-ren zee in dair nay-e fom bahn-hoef ent-lung*
- 5 **Wo gehst du hin?**  
*voe gayst doo hin*

**4 Tickets** (4 minutes)

You're buying tickets at a train station. Follow the conversation, replying in German with the help of the numbered English prompts.

**Kann ich Ihnen helfen?**

- 1 I'd like two tickets to Berlin.  
**Rückfahrkarte oder einfach?**
- 2 Round-trip, please.  
**Bitte schön. Fünfzig Euro, bitte.**
- 3 What time does the train leave?

**Um dreizehn Uhr zehn.**

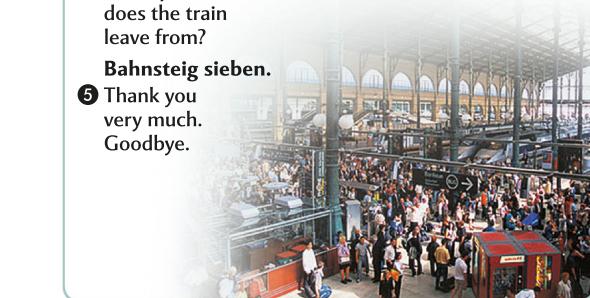
- 4 What platform does the train leave from?

**Bahnsteig sieben.**

- 5 Thank you very much. Goodbye.

**4 Tickets**

- 1 **Ich hätte gern zwei Fahrkarten nach Berlin.**  
*ikh het-te gairn tsvie fahr-kar-ten nahkh bair-leen*
- 2 **Rückfahrkarte, bitte.**  
*rewck-fahr-kar-te, bit-te*
- 3 **Wann fährt der Zug ab?**  
*vunn fairt dair tsook up*
- 4 **Von welchem Bahnsteig fährt der Zug ab?**  
*fom vel-khem bahn-shtiek fairt dair tsook up*
- 5 **Vielen Dank. Auf Wiedersehen.**  
*fee-len dunk. owf vee-der-zay-en*



## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Ask "How do you get to the museum?" (pp.42-3)

Say "I want to take the bus" and "I don't want to take a taxi." (pp.40-1)

# IN DER STADT

## About town

Most German towns still have a market day and a thriving community of small shops. Even small villages tend to have a mayor and a town hall. Parking is usually regulated. Look for blue parking zones, where you can park your car for a limited time without charge.

## 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Match the numbered locations to the words in the panel.

- 1 **das Rathaus**  
duss raht-hows
- 2 **die Brücke**  
dee brew-ke
- 3 **die Kirche**  
dee keer-khe
- 4 **der Parkplatz**  
dair park-pluts
- 5 **das Stadtzentrum**  
duss shtutt-tsen-troom
- 6 **der Platz**  
dair pluts
- 7 **die Kunstgalerie**  
dee koonst-gal-le-ree
- 8 **das Museum**  
duss moo-zay-oom



1 town hall



2 bridge



7 art gallery

church 3

square 6

## 3 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words.

**die Tankstelle** gas station  
dee tunk-shtel-le

**das Verkehrsbüro** tourist information  
duss fer-kairs-bew-roe

**die Werkstatt** car repairs  
dee vairk-shtutt

**das Schwimmbad** swimming pool  
duss shvim-bad

**die Bibliothek** library  
dee beeb-lee-o-tayk

## 4 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

A useful expression for asking about public amenities is **es gibt** (*there is*). Notice that some words are often contracted in German—for example, **in dem** (*in the*) is contracted to **im**; **zu dem** (*to the, masculine and neuter*) becomes **zum**; and **zu der** (*to the, feminine*) contracts to **zur**.

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

Is there an art gallery in town? **Gibt es eine Kunstgalerie in der Stadt?**  
*geept es ie-ne koonst-gal-le-ree in dair shtutt*

Is it far from here? **Ist das weit von hier?**  
*isst duss viet fon heer*

There is a swimming pool near the bridge. **Es gibt ein Schwimmbad bei der Brücke.**  
*es geept ien shvim-bad bie dair brew-ke*

There isn't a library. **Es gibt keine Bibliothek.**  
*es geept kie-ne beeb-lee-o-tayk*



parking lot 4

5 downtown



museum 8

## 5 Put into practice (2 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Conceal the text on the right with the cover flap and complete the dialogue in German. Check your answers and repeat if necessary.

Kann ich Ihnen helfen? **Gibt es in der Stadt eine Bibliothek?**  
*kunn ikh ee-nen hel-fen*  
Can I help you? *geept es in dair shtutt ie-ne beeb-lee-o-tayk*

Ask: Is there a library in town?

Nein, aber es gibt ein Museum. **Wie komme ich zum Museum?**  
*nine, ah-ber es geept ine moo-zay-oom*  
No, but there's a museum. *vee kom-me ikh tsoom moo-zay-oom*

Ask: How do I get to the museum?

Es ist dort. **Vielen Dank.**  
*es isst dort*  
*fee-len dunk*

It's over there.

Say: Thank you very much.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

How do you say "near the station"? (pp.42-3)

Say "Take the first left." (pp.40-1)

Ask "Where are you going?" (pp.40-1)

# DIE WEGBESCHREIBUNG

## Finding your way

In German you use **gehen** (to go) when talking about going somewhere on foot but **fahren** (to drive) when in a car. So go left is **Gehen Sie nach links** if you are on foot, but **Fahren Sie nach links** if you are travelling in a car.

## 2 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself.

**Gehen Sie nach links/rechts** go left/right  
*gay-en zee nahkh links/rekhts*

**auf der linken Seite/rechten Seite** on the left side/right side  
*owf dair lin-ken zie-te/rekh-ten zie-te*

**geradeaus (weiter)** (continue)  
*ge-rah-de-ows (vieter)* straight ahead

**Wie komme ich zum Schwimmbad?** How do I get to the swimming pool?  
*vee kom-me ikh tsoom shvim-bad*

**die erste (Straße) links** first (street) on the left  
*dee airs-te (shtrah-se) links*

**die Bibliothek**  
*dee beeb-lee-o-tayk*  
library

**die Fußgängerzone**  
*dee foos-gen-ger-tsoe-ne*  
pedestrian zone

**Gehen Sie am Hauptplatz nach links.**  
*gay-en zee am howpt-pluts nahkh links*  
Turn left at the main square.



## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



**Gibt es ein Restaurant in der Stadt?**  
*geppt es ine res-to-rung in der shtutt*

Is there a restaurant in town?



**Ja, am Bahnhof.**  
*yah, um bahn-hoef*  
Yes, near the station.



**Wie komme ich zum Bahnhof?**  
*vee kom-me ikh tsoom bahn-hoef*

How do I get to the station?

## 4 Words to remember (4 minutes)



Ich habe mich verlaufen.  
ikh hah-be mikh fer-low-fen  
I'm lost.

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

traffic lights **die Ampel**  
dee um-pel

corner **die Ecke**  
dee ek-ke

street/road **die Straße**  
dee shtrah-se

main road **die Hauptstraße**  
dee howpt-shtrah-se

at the end of the street **am Ende der Straße**  
um en-de dair shtrah-se

(town) map **der Stadtplan**  
dair shtutt-plahn

overpass **die Überführung**  
dee ew-ber-few-roong

opposite **gegenüber**  
gay-gen-ew-ber



der Brunnen  
dair broon-nen  
fountain



Wir sind hier.  
veer zind heer  
We are here.

## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Go right at the end of the street.

It's opposite the museum.

It's ten minutes by bus.



Gehen Sie an der Ampel  
nach links.  
gay-en zee un dair um-  
pel nahkh links

Go left at the traffic lights.



Ist es weit?  
isst es viet  
Is it far?



Nein, es ist fünf  
Minuten zu Fuß.  
nine, es isst fewnf  
mee-noo-ten tsoo fooss

No, it's five minutes on foot.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say the days of the week in German. (pp.28-9)

How do you say “at six o'clock”? (pp.30-1)

Ask “What time is it?” (pp.30-1)

# DIE BESICHTIGUNG Sightseeing

Museums tend to be open all day, but have more restricted opening hours in smaller villages where they are often closed on Sundays. Once a week, usually on Wednesdays or Thursdays, the larger museums will stay open later, while many are closed on Mondays and on public holidays.

## 2 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

**der Führer** guidebook  
*dair few-er*

**die Eintrittskarte** admission ticket  
*dee ine-trits-kar-te*

**die Öffnungszeiten** opening times  
*dee erff-noongs-tsie-ten*

**der Feiertag** public holiday  
*dair fie-er-tahk*

**die Ermäßigung** discount  
*dee er-mes-see-goong*



**die Führung**  
*dee few-roong*  
guided tour

**Cultural tip** Germany observes a number of religious holidays in addition to Christmas and Easter—for example, Whit Monday and Ascension Day. May 1 is always a public holiday, whatever day of the week it falls on. There are also additional regional holidays.

## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



**Sind Sie heute  
Nachmittag geöffnet?**  
*zint zee hoy-te nahk-  
mit-tahk ge-erff-net*

Are you open  
this afternoon?



**Ja, aber wir schließen  
um sechzehn Uhr.**  
*yah, ah-ber veer shliee-  
sen oom zekh-tsayn oor*

Yes, but we close  
at 4 pm.



**Gibt es Zugang für  
Rollstuhlfahrer?**  
*geept es tsoo-gung fewr  
roll-shtool-fah-er*

Do you have  
wheelchair access?

## 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

**Öffnungszeiten:**  
Di. - Fr. 11-18 Uhr  
Sa. + So. 11-16 Uhr  
(Montags geschlossen)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

What time do you open/close?

**Wann öffnen/schließen Sie?**  
vunn erf-nen/shlee-sen zee

Where are the restrooms?

**Wo sind die Toiletten?**  
voe zind dee twah-let-ten

Is there wheelchair access?

**Gibt es Zugang für Rollstuhlfahrer?**  
geept es tsoo-gung fewr roll-shtool-fah-rer

## 5 Put into practice (4 minutes)



Cover the text on the right and complete the dialogue in German.

**Das Museum ist geschlossen.**

duss moo-zay-oom ist ge-shlos-sen

The museum is closed.

**Sind Sie am Montag geöffnet?**

zint zee um moen-tahk gee-erfff-net

Ask: Are you open on Mondays?

**Ja, aber wir schließen früh.**

yah, ah-ber veer shlee-sen fewr

Yes, but we close early.

**Um wieviel Uhr?**

oom vee-feel oor

Ask: At what time?



**Ja, da drüben ist ein Fahrstuhl.**

yah, dar drew-ben issit ine fahr-shtool

Yes, there's an elevator over there.



**Danke, ich hätte gern vier Eintrittskarten.**

dun-ke, ikh het-te gairn feer ine-trits-kar-ten

Thank you, I'd like four admission tickets.



**Bitte sehr, und der Führer ist gratis.**

bit-te zair, oont dair few-rer issit grah-tis

Here you are, and the guidebook is free.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "You're on time."  
(pp.14-15)

What's the German for  
"ticket"? (pp.38-9)

Say "I am going to  
New York." (pp.40-1)

# IM FLUGHAFEN

## At the airport

Although the airport environment is largely signposted in English, it will sometimes be useful to be able to ask your way around the terminal in German. It's a good idea to make sure you have a few one-euro coins when you arrive at the airport; you may need to pay for a baggage cart.

## 2 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

**die Gepäckausgabe** baggage reclaim  
*dee ge-peck-ows-gah-be*

**der Abflug** departures  
*dair up-flook*

**die Ankunft** arrivals  
*dee un-koonft*

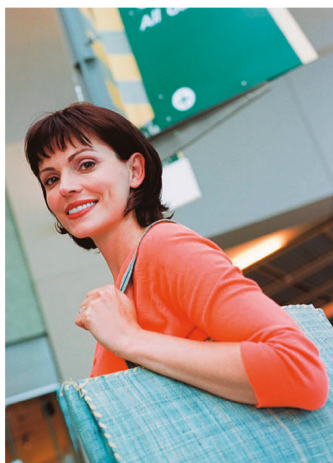
**der Zoll** customs  
*dair tsoll*

**die Passkontrolle** passport control  
*dee puss-kon-trol-le*

**das Terminal** terminal  
*duss terr-mee-nahl*

**der Flugsteig** gate  
*dair flook-shtiek*

**die Flugnummer** flight number  
*dee flook-noom-mer*



**Von welchem Flugsteig geht  
der Flug 23?**  
*fon vel-khem flook-shtiek gayt dair  
flook drie-oont-tsun-tsik*  
What gate does flight 23 leave from?

## 3 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

**Geht der Flug nach  
Hannover pünktlich ab?**  
*gayt dair flook nahkh hun-  
no-fer pewnkt-likh up* Will the flight for  
Hanover leave on  
time?

**Ich kann mein Gepäck  
nicht finden.**  
*ikh kunn mine ge-peck  
nikht fin-den* I can't find my  
baggage.





## 4 Put into practice (3 minutes)



Join in this conversation. Read the German on the left and follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.

**Guten Abend. Kann ich Ihnen helfen?**  
*goo-ten ah-bent. kunn ikh ee-nen hel-fen*

**Geht der Flug nach Köln pünktlich ab?**  
*gayt dair flook nahkh kerln pewnkt-likh up*

Hello, can I help you?

Ask: Is the flight to Cologne on time?

**Ja. Von welchem Flugsteig geht er ab?**  
*yah fon vel-khem flook-shtiek gayt air up*

Yes.  
 Ask: What gate does it leave from?

## 5 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the German words in the panel.

- ① die Bordkarte  
*dee bort-kar-te*
- ② der Abfertigungsschalter  
*dair up-fer-ti-goongs-shull-ter*
- ③ das Flugticket  
*duss flook-tik-ket*
- ④ der Pass  
*dair puss*
- ⑤ der Koffer  
*dair koff-fer*
- ⑥ das Handgepäck  
*duss hunt-ge-peck*
- ⑦ der Kofferkuli  
*dair koff-fer-koo-li*

boarding pass ①

baggage check-in ②

ticket ③

passport ④

⑤ suitcase

⑥ carry-on luggage

⑦ cart

**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**1 Places**

- 1 **das Museum**  
duss moo-zay-oom
- 2 **das Rathaus**  
duss raht-hows
- 3 **die Brücke**  
dee brew-ke
- 4 **die Kunstgalerie**  
dee koonst-gal-le-ree
- 5 **der Parkplatz**  
dair park-pluts
- 6 **der Dom**  
dair doem
- 7 **der Platz**  
dair pluts

# WIEDERHOLUNG

## Review and repeat

**1 Places (4 minutes)**

Name the numbered places in German.



1 museum



2 town hall



3 bridge



4 art gallery



5 parking lot



6 cathedral

7 square

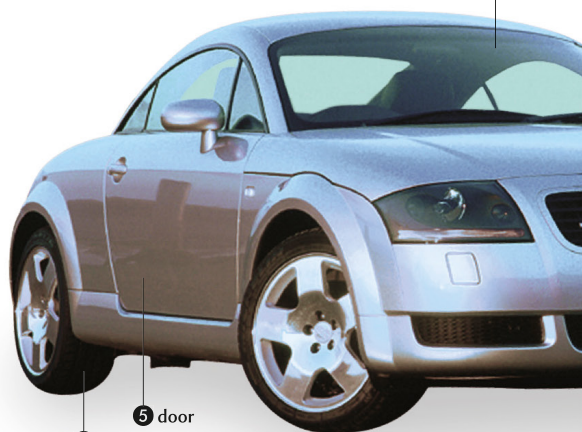
**2 Car parts**

- 1 **die Windschutzscheibe**  
dee vint-shoots-shie-be
- 2 **der Blinker**  
dair blin-ker
- 3 **die Motorhaube**  
dee mo-tor-how-be
- 4 **der Reifen**  
dair rie-fen
- 5 **die Tür**  
dee tewr
- 6 **die Stoßstange**  
dee shtoess-shtange

**2 Car parts (3 minutes)**

Name these car parts in German.

windshield 1



4 tire

5 door

**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**3 Questions** (4 minutes)

Ask the questions in German that match the following answers:

- 1 Der zbus fährt um acht Uhr ab.
- 2 Kaffee, das macht zwei Euro fünfzig.
- 3 Nein, ich möchte keinen Wein.
- 4 Der Zug fährt von Bahnsteig fünf ab.
- 5 Wir fahren nach Leipzig.
- 6 Nein, es ist drei Minuten zu Fuß.

**3 Questions**

- 1 Wann fährt der Überlandbus ab?  
*vunn fairt dair ew-ber-lunt-boos up*
- 2 Was kostet der Kaffee?  
*vuss kos-tet dair kuffay*
- 3 Möchten Sie Wein?  
*merkh-ten zee vine*
- 4 Von welchem Bahnsteig fährt der Zug ab?  
*fon vel-khem bahn-shtiek fairt dair tsook up*
- 5 Wo fahren Sie hin?  
*voe fah-ren zee hin*
- 6 Ist es weit?  
*isst es viet*

**4 Verbs** (4 minutes)

Choose the correct verb and form to fill in the blanks.

- 1 Ich \_\_\_\_\_ Deutsche(r).
- 2 Wir \_\_\_\_\_ mit dem Bus.
- 3 Sie (she) \_\_\_\_\_ nach Dresden.
- 4 Er \_\_\_\_\_ drei Töchter.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ du Tee?
- 6 Wie viele Kinder \_\_\_\_\_ Sie?
- 7 Wo \_\_\_\_\_ die Toiletten?

**4 Verbs**

- 1 bin  
*bin*
- 2 fahren  
*fah-ren*
- 3 geht  
*gayt*
- 4 hat  
*hut*
- 5 möchtest  
*merkh-test*
- 6 haben  
*hah-ben*
- 7 sind  
*zint*



2 turn signal

3 hood

bumper 6



## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

How do you ask in German "Do you take credit cards?" (pp.38-9)

Ask "How much is that?" (pp.18-19)

How do you ask "Do you have children?" (pp.12-13)

# DIE ZIMMER-RESERVIERUNG

## Booking a room

There are different types of accommodation: **das Hotel**, rated by one to five stars; **die Pension** or **der Gasthof**, which are traditional inns; and private accommodation where signs advertise **Zimmer frei** or **Fremdenzimmer**.

## 2 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Practice these phrases and then test yourself by concealing the German on the left with the cover flap.

**Ist das Frühstück inbegriffen?**  
isst duss frew-shtewk in-be-grif-fen

Is breakfast included?



**Sind Tiere zugelassen?**  
zint tee-re tsoo-ge-luss-sen

Are pets allowed?



**Haben Sie Zimmerservice?**  
hah-ben zee tsim-mer-sair-vis

Do you have room service?



**Wann muss ich das Zimmer freimachen?**  
vunn mooss ikh duss tsim-mer frie-ma-khen

When must I vacate the room?



## 3 In conversation (5 minutes)



**Haben Sie noch Zimmer frei?**  
hah-ben zee nokh tsim-mer frie

Do you have any vacancies?



**Ja, ein Doppelzimmer.**  
yah. ine dop-pel-tsim-mer

Yes, a double room.



**Haben Sie ein Kinderbett?**  
hah-ben zee ine kin-der-bet

Do you have a crib?

#### 4 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself by concealing the German on the right with the cover flap.



**Hat das Zimmer Blick auf den Park?**  
*hut duss tsim-mer blick owf dayn park*  
 Does the room have a view over the park?

air-conditioning **die Klimaanlage**  
*dee klee-mah-un-lah-ge*

room **das Zimmer**  
*duss tsim-mer*

single room **das Einzelzimmer**  
*duss ine-tsel-tsim-mer*

double room **das Doppelzimmer**  
*duss dop-pel-tsim-mer*

twin beds **die zwei Einzelbetten**  
*dee tsvie ine-tsel-bet-ten*

bathroom **das Badezimmer**  
*duss bah-de-tsim-mer*

shower **die Dusche**  
*dee doo-she*

breakfast **das Frühstück**  
*duss frew-shtewk*

key **der Schlüssel**  
*dair shlews-sel*

balcony **der Balkon**  
*dair bull-kong*

#### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Do you have a single room, please?

Does the room have a balcony?

**Cultural tip** Some, but not all, hotels and guest houses will include breakfast in the price of a room; in others you will be charged extra. Often breakfast is in the style of a **Frühstücksbuffet** (breakfast buffet) and includes cereals, a selection of breads, cooked meats, cheeses, jams, fruit juices, and a choice of coffee or tea.



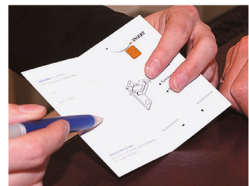
**Wie lange möchten Sie bleiben?**  
*vee lun-ge merkhten zee blie-ben*

How long will you be staying?



**Drei Nächte.**  
*drie nekh-te*

For three nights.



**Sehr gut. Hier ist Ihr Schlüssel.**  
*zair goot. heer isst eer shlews-sel*

That's fine. Here's your key.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

How do you say "is there...?" and "there isn't...?" (pp.48-9)

What does "Haben Sie reserviert?" mean? (pp.20-1)

# IM HOTEL

## In the hotel

Although rooms in larger hotels almost always have private bathrooms, there are still some **Pensionen** and guest houses where you will have to share facilities with other guests. Prices are generally charged for the room, and not per person, so a family staying in one room can be a cheap option.

## 2 Match and repeat (6 minutes)

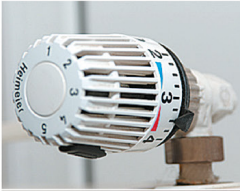
Match the numbered items in this hotel bedroom with the German text in the panel and test yourself using the cover flap.

- 1 der Nachttisch  
*dair nukht-tish*
- 2 die Lampe  
*dee lum-pe*
- 3 die Minibar  
*dee mini-bar*
- 4 die Vorhänge  
*dee foer-hen-ge*
- 5 die Couch  
*dee kowtch*
- 6 das Kopfkissen  
*duss kopf-kis-sen*
- 7 das Kissen  
*duss kis-sen*
- 8 das Bett  
*duss bet*
- 9 die Tagesdecke  
*dee tah-ges-dek-ke*
- 10 die Decke  
*dee dek-ke*



**Cultural tip** Hotel prices vary widely. They are higher during the season in summer or winter resorts. They are often much higher in cities during trade fairs and festivals, such as the Frankfurt Book Fair, the Berlinale Film Festival, the Cologne carnival, the Hanover computer fair (CEBIT), or the Munich October beer festival.

### 3 Useful phrases (5 minutes)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

The room is too warm/cold.

**Das Zimmer ist zu warm/kalt.**  
*duss tsim-mer isst tsoo varm/kullt*



There are no towels.

**Es gibt keine Handtücher**  
*es geept kie-ne hunt-tew-kher*



I need some soap.

**Ich brauche Seife.**  
*ikh brow-khe zie-fe*



The shower doesn't work.

**Die Dusche funktioniert nicht.**  
*dee doo-she foonk-tsee-oe-neert nikht*



The elevator is broken.

**Der Fahrstuhl ist kaputt.**  
*dair fahr-shtool isst ka-poott*

### 4 Put into practice (3 minutes)



Cover the text on the right and complete the dialogue in German.

**Kann ich Ihnen helfen?**  
*kunn ikh eenen hel-fen*

**Ich brauche Decken.**  
*ikh brow-khe dek-ken*

Can I help you?

Say: I need blankets.



**Das Zimmermädchen wird sie bringen.**  
*duss tsim-mer-met-khen virt zee brin-gen*

**Und der Fernseher ist kaputt.**  
*oont dair fairn-zay-er isst ka-poott*

The maid will bring some.

Say: And the television is broken.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Ask "Can I?" (pp.34-5)

What is German for "the shower"? (pp.58-9)

Say "I need some towels." (pp.60-1)

# BEIM CAMPING

## Camping

Camping has long been popular in Germany. There are numerous camp-grounds all over the country. These tend to be of a high standard, usually equipped with bathrooms, kitchens, shops, restaurants, and sometimes a swimming pool. Tourist offices have information about sites in their area.

**der Campingplatz ist ruhig.**

*dair kam-ping-plutz isst roo-hik*

The campground is quiet.

**das Campingplatz-büro**

*duss kamping-plutz-bew-roe*

campsite office

## 2 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases. Then test yourself by concealing the German with the cover flap.

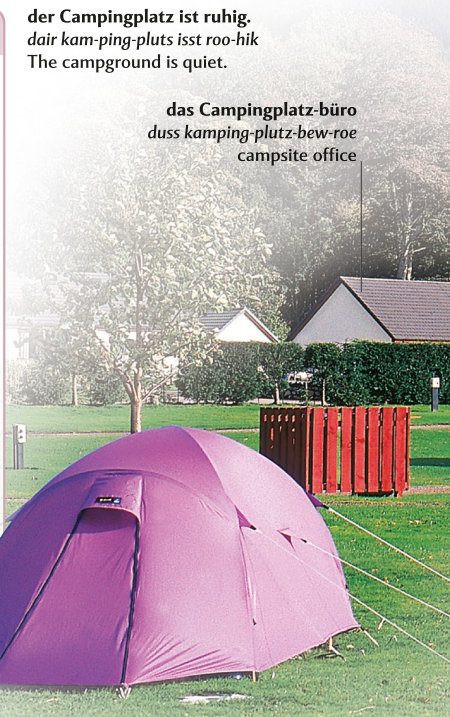
**Kann ich ein Fahrrad ausleihen?**  
*kunn ikh ine fahr-raht ows-lie-en*  
Can I rent a bicycle?

**Ist das Wasser trinkbar?**  
*isst duss vuss-ser trink-bahr*  
Is this drinking water?

**Sind Lagerfeuer erlaubt?**  
*zint lah-ger-foy-er er-lowpt*  
Are campfires allowed?

**Radios sind verboten.**  
*rah-dee-os zint fer-boe-ten*  
Radios are not allowed.

**das Überzelt**  
*duss ew-ber-tselt*  
fly sheet



## 3 In conversation: (5 minutes)



**Ich brauche einen Platz für zwei Tage.**  
*ikh brow-khe ie-nen plutz fewr tsvie tah-ge*

I need a site for two days.



**Es gibt einen beim Schwimmbad.**  
*es geept ie-nen bime shvim-bad*

There's one near the swimming pool.



**Wieviel kostet es für einen Wohnwagen?**  
*vee-feel kos-tet es fewr ie-nen vohn-vah-gen*

How much is it for a camper?



#### 4 Say it (2 minutes)

I need a site for four days.

Can I rent a tent?

Where's the electrical hookup?

**der Stromanschluss**  
*dair shtroh-un-shlooss*  
electrical hookup

**die Toiletten**  
*dee twah-let-ten*  
restrooms

**die Zeltschnur**  
*dee tsel-schnoor*  
guy rope

**der Hering**  
*dair hay-ring*  
tent peg

#### 5 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

tent	<b>das Zelt</b> <i>duss tsel</i>
camper trailer	<b>der Wohnwagen</b> <i>dair voen-vah-gen</i>
camper van	<b>das Wohnmobil</b> <i>duss voen-moe-beel</i>
campground	<b>der Campingplatz</b> <i>dair kam-ping-pluts</i>
site	<b>der Platz</b> <i>dair pluts</i>
campfire	<b>das Lagerfeuer</b> <i>duss lah-ger-foy-er</i>
drinking water	<b>das Trinkwasser</b> <i>duss trink-vuss-ser</i>
garbage	<b>der Abfall</b> <i>dair up-full</i>
showers	<b>die Duschen</b> <i>dee doo-shen</i>
stove fuel	<b>das Campinggas</b> <i>duss kam-ping-gahs</i>
sleeping bag	<b>der Schlafsack</b> <i>dair shlahf-zuck</i>
air mattress	<b>die Luftmatratze</b> <i>dee looft-mah-trat-se</i>
groundsheet	<b>der Zeltboden</b> <i>dair tsel-bo-den</i>



**Fünfzig Euro, einen Tag im voraus.**  
*fewnf-tsik oy-roe, ie-nen tahk im for-ows*

Fifty euros, one day in advance.



**Kann ich einen Grill mieten?**  
*kunn ikh ie-nen grill mee-ten*

Can I rent a barbecue?



**Ja, aber sie müssen eine Kautions hinterlegen.**  
*yah, ah-ber zee mewssen ie-ne kow-tsee-oen hin-ter-lay-gen*

Yes, but you must pay a deposit.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

How do you say "hot" and "cold"? (pp.60-1)

What is the German for "room," "bed," and "pillow"? (pp.60-1)

# BESCHREIBUNGEN

## Descriptions

Simple descriptive sentences are easily constructed in German: **Das Zimmer ist kalt** (*the room is cold*). Note that when adjectives are put first, they may have different endings, such as **-er**, **-e**, **-es**, or **-en**—for example, **ein kaltes Zimmer** (*a cold room*). Just learn these in context as you encounter them.

## 2 Words to remember (7 minutes)

Learn these words and then test yourself.

**hart** hard  
*hart*

**weich** soft  
*viekh*

**heiß** hot  
*hiess*

**kalt** cold  
*kullt*

**groß** big/tall  
*groes*

**klein** small/short  
*kline*

**schön** beautiful  
*shern*

**hässlich** ugly  
*hess-likh*

**laut** noisy  
*lowt*

**ruhig** quiet  
*roo-hig*

**gut** good  
*goot*

**schlecht** bad  
*shlekt*

**langsam** slow  
*lung-zahm*

**schnell** fast  
*shnell*

**dunkel** dark  
*doon-kel*

**hell** light  
*hell*

**Die Berge sind hoch.**

*dee ber-ge zint hoekh*  
The mountains are high.

**Der Hügel ist niedrig.**  
*dair hew-gel isst nee-drikh*  
The hill is low.

**Die Kirche ist alt.**  
*dee kir-khe isst alt*  
The church is old.



**Das Haus ist klein.**  
*duss hows isst kline*  
The house is small.

**Das Dorf ist sehr schön.**  
*duss dorf isst zair shern*  
The village is very beautiful.

### 3 Useful phrases (4 minutes)



To qualify a description add **sehr** (very) or **zu** (too) in front of the adjective, or surround it with **nicht... genug** (not... enough).

This coffee is cold. **Dieser Kaffee ist kalt.**  
*dee-zer kuf-fay isst kullt*



My room is very noisy. **Mein Zimmer ist sehr laut.**  
*mine tsim-mer isst zair lowt*



My car is too small. **Mein Auto ist zu klein.**  
*mine ow-to isst tsoo kline*



The bed is not soft enough. **Das Bett ist nicht weich genug.**  
*das bet isst nikht viekh ge-nookh*

### 4 Put into practice (3 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Cover up the text on the right and complete the dialogue in German. Check and repeat if necessary.



**Hier ist das Zimmer.** **Die Aussicht ist sehr schön.**  
*heer isst duss tsim-mer* *dee ows-zikht isst zair shern*

Here is the room.

Say: The view is very beautiful.



**Dort ist das Badezimmer.** **Es ist zu klein.**  
*dort isst duss bah-de-tsim-mer* *es isst tsoo kline*

There is the bathroom.

Say: It is too small.



**Wir haben sonst keins.** **Dann nehmen wir das Zimmer.**  
*veer hah-ben zontst keins* *dan nay-men veer duss tsim-mer*

We don't have another one.

Say: Then we'll take the room.

## Antworten

Answers (Cover with flap)

# WIEDERHOLUNG

## Review and repeat

### 1 Adjectives

- 1 The room is too hot.
- 2 My pillow is too small.
- 3 The coffee is good.
- 4 The bathroom is very cold.
- 5 My car is not big enough.

### 1 Adjectives (3 minutes)

What do these sentences mean?

- 1 Das Zimmer ist zu heiß.
- 2 Mein Kopfkissen ist zu klein.
- 3 Der Kaffee ist gut.
- 4 Das Badezimmer ist sehr kalt.
- 5 Mein Auto ist nicht groß genug.



### 2 Campground

- 1 der Stromanschluss  
dair shtrohm-unshloos
- 2 das Zelt  
duss tsel
- 3 die Zeltschnur  
dee tsel-shnoor
- 4 die Toiletten  
dee twah-let-ten
- 5 der Wohnwagen  
dair voen-vah-gen

### 2 Campground (3 minutes)

Name these items you might find in a campground.



**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**3 At the hotel** (4 minutes)

You are booking a room in a hotel. Follow the conversation, replying in German following the English prompts.

**Kann ich Ihnen helfen?**

- ① Do you have any vacancies?

**Ja, ein Doppelzimmer.**

- ② Are pets allowed?

**Ja, wie lange möchten Sie bleiben?**

- ③ Three nights.

**Das macht zweihundertfünfzig Euro.**

- ④ Is breakfast included?

**Selbstverständlich, hier ist der Schlüssel.**

- ⑤ Thank you very much.

**3 At the hotel**

- ① **Haben Sie noch Zimmer frei?**

*hah-ben zee nokh tsim-mer frie*

- ② **Sind Tiere zugelassen?**

*zint tee-re tooo-ge-luss-sen*

- ③ **Drei Nächte.**

*drie nekh-te*

- ④ **Ist das Frühstück inbegriffen?**

*isst duss frew-shtewk in-be-grif-fen*

- ⑤ **Vielen Dank.**

*fee-len dunk*

**4 Negatives** (5 minutes)

Make these sentences negative using the verb in brackets.

- ① Ich \_\_\_\_\_ Kinder. (haben)  
 ② Sie \_\_\_\_\_ morgen nach Hamburg. (fahren)  
 ③ Er \_\_\_\_\_ Wein. (möchten)  
 ④ Ich \_\_\_\_\_ Zucker in meinem Kaffee. (nehmen)  
 ⑤ Die Aussicht \_\_\_\_\_ sehr schön. (sein)

④ restrooms

⑤ camper

**4 Negatives**

- ① **habe keine**

*hah-be kie-ne*

- ② **fährt nicht**

*fairt nikht*

- ③ **möchte keinen**

*merkh-te kie-nen*

- ④ **nehme keinen**

*nay-me kie-nen*

- ⑤ **ist nicht**

*isst nikht*

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Ask "How do I get to the station?" (pp.50-1)

Say "Turn left at the traffic lights," "Go straight ahead," "The station is across from the café." (pp.50-1)

# EINKAUFEN Shopping

Although shopping centers on the outskirts of the cities are increasingly important in Germany, there are still many smaller, traditional, specialized shops. Excellent local markets exist in large cities and small villages. Ask the **Verkehrsbüro** (tourist office) when the local market day is held.

## 2 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Match the shops numbered 1-9 below and right to the German in the panel. Then test yourself using the cover flap.

- 1 die Bäckerei  
dee bek-ke-rie
- 2 die Konditorei  
dee kon-dee-to-rie
- 3 das Zeitungskiosk  
duss tsie-toongs-kee-osk
- 4 die Fleischerei  
dee flie-she-rie
- 5 das Feinkostgeschäft  
duss fine-kost-ge-sheft
- 6 die Buchhandlung  
dee bookh-hund-loong
- 7 das Fischgeschäft  
duss fish-ge-sheft
- 8 die Apotheke  
dee a-po-tay-ke
- 9 die Bank  
dee bunk



1 bakery



2 pastry shop



4 butcher shop



5 delicatessen



7 fishmonger



8 pharmacy



**Cultural tip** A German **Apotheke** (pharmacy) dispenses both prescription and over-the-counter medicines. It also sells a small range of upmarket health and beauty products. Everyday toiletries such as soap and shampoo are more usually obtained from the **Drogerie**, which is often a self-service supermarket. These stores do not, however, sell medicines of any kind.

### 3 Words to remember (4 minutes)



**Der Blumenladen**  
dair bloo-men-lah-den  
florist

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

antique dealer	<b>der</b> <b>Antiquitätenladen</b> dair an-ti-qvi-tay-ten-lah-den
----------------	--

hairdresser	<b>der Friseur</b> dair fri-zer
-------------	------------------------------------

jeweler	<b>der Juwelier</b> dair yoo-ve-leer
---------	---

post office	<b>die Post</b> dee post
-------------	-----------------------------

shoe shop	<b>das Schuhgeschäft</b> duss shoo-ge-sheft
-----------	--

dry-cleaner	<b>das Benzinbad</b> duss ben-tseen-baht
-------------	---

hardware store	<b>der Eisenwarenhändler</b> dair ie-zen-vah-ren-hend-ler
----------------	--



**3** newsstand



**6** bookstore



**9** bank

### 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these phrases.

Where can I find the hairdresser?	<b>Wo ist der Friseur?</b> voe isst dair fri-zer
-----------------------------------	---

Where do I pay?	<b>Wo kann ich zahlen?</b> voe kunn ikh tsh-len
-----------------	--

Thank you, I'm just looking.	<b>Danke, ich schaue mich nur um.</b> dun-ke, ikh show-e mikh noor oomm
------------------------------	--

Do you sell SIM cards?	<b>Verkaufen Sie SIM-Karten?</b> fer-kow-fen zee seem-kar-ten
------------------------	--

I'd like two of these.	<b>Ich hätte gern zwei von diesen.</b> ikh het-te gainr tsvie fon dee-zen
------------------------	--

Is there a department store in town?	<b>Gibt es in der Stadt ein Kaufhaus?</b> geept es in dair shtutt ine kowf-hows
--------------------------------------	--

Can I place an order?	<b>Kann ich bitte bestellen?</b> kunn ikh bit-te be-shtel-len
-----------------------	--

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Where can I find the bank?

Do you sell cheese?

Where do I pay?

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

What is German for "40", "56", "77", "82", and "94"? (pp.30-1)

Say "I'd like a big room." (pp.64-5)

Ask "Do you have a small car?" (pp.64-5)

# AUF DEM MARKT

## At the market

Germany uses the metric system of weights and measures. You need to ask for produce in kilograms or grams. You may find that the older generation still uses the term **ein Pfund** (a pound) meaning half a kilo. Larger items, such as melons, are sold **am Stück** (individually).

## 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Match the numbered items in this scene with the text in the panel.

- 1 der Rhabarber  
dair ra-bar-ber
- 2 die Kartoffeln  
dee kar-toff-eln
- 3 die Radieschen  
dee ra-dees-khen
- 4 der Spinat  
dair shpee-naht
- 5 die Möhren  
dee mer-ren
- 6 der Kohl  
dair koel
- 7 die Lauche  
dee low-khe
- 8 der Kohlrabi  
dair koel-rah-bee



## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



Ich hätte gern Tomaten.  
ikh het-te gainr  
to-mah-ten

I'd like some tomatoes.



Die großen oder die  
kleinen?  
dee groe-sen oe-der dee  
klie-nen

The large ones or the  
small ones?



Zwei Kilo kleine, bitte.  
tsvie kee-lo klie-ne,  
bit-te

Two kilos of the small  
ones, please.



**Cultural tip** Germany uses the common European currency, the euro, divided into 100 cents. You will usually hear the price as **zehn Euro zwanzig** (€10.20). Often, the word **Euro** is also omitted: **zwei dreißig** (€2.30).



#### 4 Say it (2 minutes)

Three kilos of potatoes, please.

The carrots are too expensive.

How much is the cabbage?

4 spinach

5 carrots

#### 5 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

In German you don't need a word for *of* between the measurement unit (kilo) and the thing you are buying: **ein Kilo Kirschen** (a kilo of cherries).



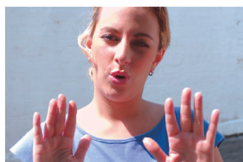
**Diese Würstchen sind zu teuer.**  
*dee-ze vewrst-khen zint tsoo toy-er*

These sausages are too expensive.



**Was kostet ein Kilo Trauben?**  
*vuss kos-tet ine kee-lo-trowben*

How much is a kilo of grapes?



**Das ist alles.**  
*duss isst ull-les*

That's all.



**Sonst noch etwas?**  
*zont nokh et-vuss*

Anything else?



**Das ist alles, danke.**  
**Was kostet das?**  
*duss isst ull-les, dun-ke.*  
*vuss kos-tet duss*

That's all, thank you.  
How much?



**Drei Euro fünfzig.**  
*drie oy-roe fewnf-tsik*

Three euros, fifty.

**1 Warm up** (1 minute)

What are these items you could buy in a supermarket? (pp.24-5)

das Fleisch  
der Fisch  
der Käse  
der Fruchtsaft  
der Wein  
das Wasser

# IM SUPERMARKT

## At the supermarket

Supermarkets in Germany range from the very well stocked at the expensive end of the market to much cheaper, budget chains. Some larger supermarkets, often in the basement of department stores, have small restaurants where you can sample the produce as you shop.

**2 Match and repeat** (5 minutes)

Look at the numbered items and match them to the German words in the panel below. Then test yourself using the cover flap.

- 1** die Haushaltswaren  
*dee hows-hults-vah-ren*
- 2** das Obst  
*duss opst*
- 3** die Getränke  
*dee ge-tren-ke*
- 4** die Fertiggerichte  
*dee fair-tikh-ge-rikk-te*
- 5** die Kosmetika  
*dee kos-may-tee-ka*
- 6** die Milchprodukte  
*dee milkh-pro-dook-te*
- 7** das Gemüse  
*duss ge-mew-ze*
- 8** die Tiefkühlkost  
*dee teef-kewl-kost*



**Cultural tip** In Germany it is unusual and frowned upon to ask for a plastic bag for your purchases, and you will have to pay for them. Instead, people use their own baskets or reusable cotton bags that are sold at supermarkets.

### 3 Useful phrases (3 minutes)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

May I have  
a bag?

**Ich hätte gern eine  
Tragetasche.**  
*ikh het-te gairn ie-ne  
trah-ge-tush-e*



Where is the drinks aisle?

**Wo ist der Gang mit  
den Getränken?**  
*voe isst dair gung mit den  
ge-tren-ken*



Where is the  
check-out, please?

**Wo ist die Kasse, bitte?**  
*voe isst dee kuss-se,  
bit-te*

Please type in  
your PIN.

**Bitte geben Sie Ihre  
Geheimzahl ein**  
*bit-te gay-ben zee ee-ree  
ge-hime-tsaahl ine*

5 beauty  
products

### 4 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and then test yourself.

bread **das Brot**  
*duss broet*

milk **die Milch**  
*dee milkh*

butter **die Butter**  
*dee boott-ter*

ham **der Schinken**  
*dair shin-ken*

salt **das Salz**  
*duss zullts*

pepper **der Pfeffer**  
*dair pfeff-fer*

laundry detergent **das Waschpulver**  
*duss vush-pool-fer*

toilet paper **das Toilettenpapier**  
*duss twah-let-ten-pa-peer*

dishwashing liquid **das Geschirrspülmittel**  
*duss ge-sheerr-shpewl-  
mit-tel*

6 dairy  
products

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Where's the dairy  
products aisle?

May I have some  
ham, please?

Where are the  
restrooms?

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "I'd like...".  
(pp.22-3)

Ask "Do you have...?"  
(pp.12-13)

Say "38," "42," and  
"46." (pp.30-1)

Say "big" and "small."  
(pp.64-5)

# BEKLEIDUNG UND SCHUHE

## Clothes and shoes

When buying clothes, it is useful to know the colors. In German, colors can be adjectives or nouns; in the latter case they start with a capital: **Der Rock ist rot** (*The skirt is red*) but **Ich nehme diese in Rot** (*I'll take this in red*).

## 2 Match and repeat (4 minutes)

Match the numbered items of clothing to the German words in the panel below.

- 1 das Hemd  
duss hemt
- 2 die Krawatte  
dee kra-vutt-te
- 3 die Jacke  
dee yuk-ke
- 4 die Tasche  
dee ta-she
- 5 der Ärmel  
dair airr-mel
- 6 die Hose  
dee hoe-ze
- 7 der Rock  
dair rok
- 8 die Strumpfhose  
dee shtroompf-  
hoe-ze
- 9 die Schuhe  
dee shoo-e



**Cultural tip** Like most of Europe, Germany uses the continental system of sizes. Dress sizes usually range from 36 (US 10) through to 46 (US 18) and shoe sizes from 37 (US 6) to 45 (US 12). For men's shirts, a size 41 is a 16-inch collar, 43 is a 17-inch collar, and 45 is an 18-inch collar.



### 3 Useful phrases (3 minutes)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

I'll take this in pink. **Ich nehme das in Rosa.**  
*ikh nay-me duss in ro-sa*



Do you have this a size larger/smaller? **Haben Sie das eine Nummer größer/kleiner?**  
*hah-ben zee duss ie-ne noom-mer grer-ser/klie-ner*



It's not what I'm looking for. **Es ist nicht das, was ich suche.**  
*es isst nikht duss, vuss ikh zoo-khe*



7 skirt

8 pantyhose

9 shoes

### 4 Words to remember (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the cover flap.

red **rot**  
*roet*

white **weiß**  
*vies*

blue **blau**  
*blow*

yellow **gelb**  
*gelp*

green **grün**  
*grewn*

black **schwarz**  
*shvarts*

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Do you have this jacket in black?

Do you have this in a 38?

Do you have a size smaller?

**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**WIEDERHOLUNG**  
Review and repeat**1 Market**

- 1 die Kartoffeln  
*dee kar-toff-eln*
- 2 die Radieschen  
*dee ra-dees-khen*
- 3 der Spinat  
*dair shpee-naht*
- 4 der Kohl  
*dair koel*
- 5 der Lauch  
*dair lowkh*
- 6 die Möhren  
*dee mer-ren*

**1 Market** (3 minutes)

Name the numbered items. Conceal the answers with the cover flap, then check that you have remembered the German correctly.

**2 Description**

- 1 These shoes are too expensive.
- 2 My room is very small.
- 3 The bed is too hard.

**2 Description** (2 minutes)

What do these sentences mean?

- 1 Diese Schuhe sind zu teuer.
- 2 Mein Zimmer ist sehr klein.
- 3 Das Bett ist zu hart.

**3 Shops**

- 1 die Bäckerei  
*dee bek-ke-rie*
- 2 die Bank  
*dee bunk*
- 3 die Buchhandlung  
*dee bookh-hund-loong*
- 4 das Fischgeschäft  
*duss fish-ge-sheft*
- 5 die Konditorei  
*dee kon-dee-to-rie*
- 6 die Fleischerei  
*dee flie-she-rie*

**3 Shops** (3 minutes)

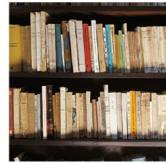
Name the numbered shops in German. Then check your answers.



1 bakery



2 bank



3 bookstore



4 fishmonger



5 pastry shop



6 butcher shop

**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**4 Supermarket** (3 minutes)

Name the numbered items. Cover the answers with the flap and then check to see if you remembered correctly.

- ① household products
- ② beauty products
- ③ drinks
- ④ dairy products
- ⑤ vegetables

**4 Supermarket**

- ① **die Haushaltswaren**  
*dee hows-hults-vah-ren*
- ② **die Kosmetika**  
*dee kos-may-tee-ka*
- ③ **die Getränke**  
*dee ge-tren-ke*
- ④ **die Milchprodukte**  
*dee milkh-pro-dook-te*
- ⑤ **das Gemüse**  
*duss ge-mew-ze*

**5 Museum** (4 minutes)

Follow this conversation, replying in German following the English prompts.

**Guten Tag. Kann ich Ihnen helfen?**

- ① I'd like five tickets.

**Das macht siebzig Euro.**

- ② That's very expensive!

**Wir geben keine Ermäßigung für Kinder.**

- ③ How much is a guide?

**Fünfzehn Euro.**

- ④ Five tickets and a guide, please.

**Fünfundachtzig Euro, bitte.**

- ⑤ Here you are. Where are the restrooms?

**Dort drüben.**

- ⑥ Thank you very much.

**5 Museum**

- ① **Ich hätte gern fünf Eintrittskarten.**  
*ikh het-te gainr fewnf ine-trits-kar-ten*
- ② **Das ist sehr teuer!**  
*duss isst zair toy-er*
- ③ **Was kostet der Führer?**  
*vuss kos-tet dair few-rer*
- ④ **Fünf Eintrittskarten und einen Führer, bitte.**  
*fewnf ine-trits-kar-ten oont ie-nen few-rer, bit-te*
- ⑤ **Bitte sehr. Wo sind die Toiletten?**  
*bit-te zair. voe zint dee twah-let-ten*
- ⑥ **Vielen Dank.**  
*fee-len dunk*

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Ask "Which platform?" (pp.38-9)

What is the German for the following family members: sister, brother, mother, father, son, and daughter? (pp.10-11)

# BERUFE Jobs

Most job titles are masculine. They can be turned into the feminine equivalent by adding **-in**: for example, **der Lehrer/die Lehrerin** (male/female teacher). You don't need to use the indefinite article *a* when you describe your job: **Ich bin Buchhalter** (I'm an accountant).

## 2 Words to remember: jobs (7 minutes)

The feminine ending is shown in brackets. Some jobs change the main vowel to an umlaut for the feminine form: **Arzt/Ärztin** (male/female doctor).

<b>Arzt/Ärztin</b> artst/airts-tin	doctor
<b>Zahnarzt/ Zahnärztin</b> tsahn-artst/ tsahn-airts-tin	dentist
<b>Krankenpfleger/ Krankenschwester</b> krunk-en-pflay-ger/ krunk-en-shves-ter	nurse
<b>Lehrer(in)</b> lay-rer(in)	teacher
<b>Buchhalter(in)</b> bookh-hull-ter(in)	accountant
<b>Rechtsanwalt/ Rechtsanwältin</b> rekhts-un-vullt/ rekhts-un-vel-tin	lawyer
<b>Grafiker(in)</b> grah-fi-ker(in)	designer
<b>Berater(in)</b> be-rah-ter(in)	consultant
<b>Sekretär(in)</b> zek-re-tair(in)	secretary
<b>Verkäufer(in)</b> fer-koy-fer(in)	store clerk
<b>Elektriker(in)</b> ay-lek-tree-ker(in)	electrician
<b>Klempner(in)</b> klemp-ner(in)	plumber
<b>selbstständig</b> zelpst-shten-dikh	self-employed



**Ich bin Klempner.**  
ikh bin klemp-ner  
I'm a plumber.



**Sie ist Lehrerin.**  
zee isst lay-re-rin  
She's a teacher.



**3 Put into practice** (4 minutes)



Practice these phrases. Then cover up the text on the right and complete the dialogue in German.

**Was machen Sie beruflich?**

*vuss ma-khen zee be-roof-likh*

What do you do?

Say: I am a consultant.

**Ich bin Berater.**

*ikh bin be-rah-ter*



**Bei welcher Firma arbeiten Sie?**

*bie vel-kher fir-ma ar-bie-ten zee*

What company do you work for?

Say: I'm self-employed.

**Ich bin selbstständig.**

*ikh bin zelpst-shten-dikh*



**Wie interessant!**

*vee in-tay-res-sunt*

How interesting!

Ask: And what do you do?

**Und was machen Sie beruflich?**

*oont vuss ma-khen zee be-roof-likh*



**Ich bin Zahnarzt.**

*ikh bin tsahn-artst*

I'm a dentist.

Say: My sister is a dentist, too.

**Mein Schwester ist auch Zahnärztin.**

*mie-ne shves-ter isst owkh tsahn-airts-tin*

**4 Words to remember: workplace** (3 minutes)



Die Zentrale ist in Bremen.  
*dee tsen-trah-le isst in bray-men*  
Headquarters is in Bremen.

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself.

headquarters **die Zentrale**  
*dee tsen-trah-le*

branch **die Zweigstelle**  
*dee tsviek-shtel-le*

department **die Abteilung**  
*dee up-tie-loong*

superior **der/die Vorgesetzte**  
*dair/dee for-ge-zets-te*

trainee **der Auszubildende**  
*dair ows-tsoo-bilden-de*

reception **der Empfang**  
*dair emp-fung*

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Practice different ways of introducing yourself in different situations. Mention your name, your occupation, and any other information you'd like to give. (pp.8-9, pp.14-15, and pp.78-9)

# DAS BÜRO

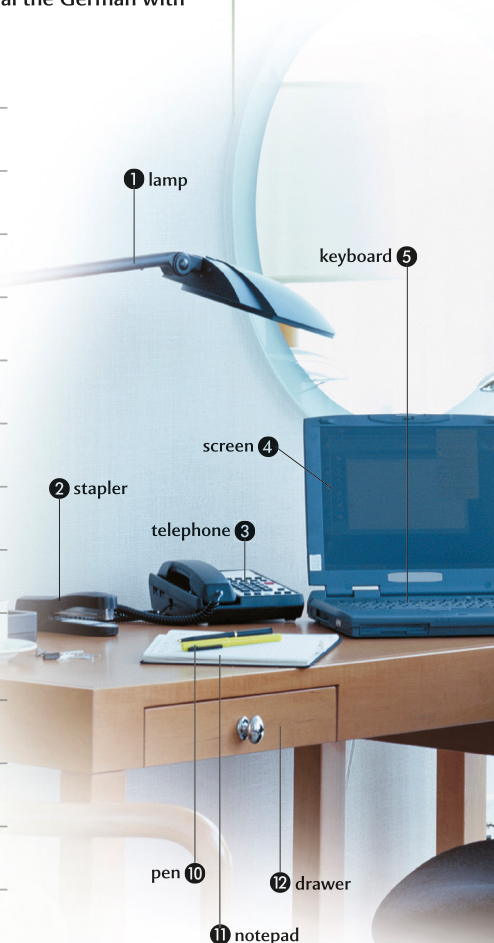
## The office

In all countries, each company has its own special terms, but there are many items that are universal, and the English word is often used. Note that the German keyboard has a different layout from the standard QWERTY convention, and that **das Handy** is a cell phone.

## 2 Words to remember (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words. Read them aloud several times and try to memorize them. Conceal the German with the cover flap and test yourself.

<b>der Monitor</b> <i>dair mo-nee-tor</i>	monitor
<b>der Computer</b> <i>dair kom-pyoo-ter</i>	computer
<b>die Maus</b> <i>dee mows</i>	mouse
<b>die E-Mail</b> <i>dee ee-mayle</i>	e-mail
<b>das Internet</b> <i>duss in-ter-net</i>	internet
<b>das Passwort</b> <i>duss puss-vort</i>	password
<b>die Voice-Mail</b> <i>dee voyse-mayle</i>	voicemail
<b>der WIFI Code</b> <i>dair wi-fi kodder</i>	Wi-Fi code
<b>Fotokopierer</b> <i>dair fo-to-ko-pee-er</i>	photocopier
<b>der Terminkalender</b> <i>dair terr-meen-ka-len-der</i>	planner
<b>die Visitenkarte</b> <i>dee vi-see-ten-kar-te</i>	business card
<b>die Besprechung</b> <i>dee be-shpre-khoong</i>	meeting
<b>die Konferenz</b> <i>dee kon-fay-rents</i>	conference
<b>die Tagesordnung</b> <i>dee tah-ges-ort-noong</i>	agenda



**3 Useful phrases** (2 minutes)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

I need to photocopy something. **Ich muss etwas fotokopieren.**  
ikh mooss et-vuss fo-to-ko-pee-ren



I'd like to arrange an appointment. **Ich möchte einen Termin ausmachen.**  
ikh merkh-te ie-nen tair-meen ows-ma-khen



I want to send an email. **Ich möchte eine E-Mail schicken.**  
ikh merkh-te ie-ne ee-mayle shik-ken

**4 Say it** (2 minutes)

I'd like to arrange a conference.

I have a laptop.

Do you have a business card?

6 laptop

7 desk

8 clock

printer 9

13 swivel chair

**5 Match and repeat** (5 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the words in the panel and test yourself.

- 1 die Lampe  
dee lum-pe
- 2 das Heftgerät  
duss heft-ge-rayt
- 3 das Telefon  
duss tay-lay-foen
- 4 der Bildschirm  
dair bilt-sheerm
- 5 die Tastatur  
dee tuss-tah-toor
- 6 der Laptop  
dair lap-top
- 7 der Schreibtisch  
dair shriep-tish
- 8 die Uhr  
dee oor
- 9 der Drucker  
dair drook-ker
- 10 der Stift  
dair shtift
- 11 der Notizblock  
dair no-teets-blok
- 12 die Schublade  
dee shoop-lah-de
- 13 der Drehstuhl  
dair dray-shtool

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "How interesting!" (pp.78-9) and "library." (pp.48-9)

Ask "What do you do?" and answer "I'm an accountant." (pp.78-9)

# DIE AKADEMISCHE WELT

## Academic world

At German universities, you have to earn credits, often over many years, before you can take the final exam. The first degree is either a **Staatsexamen** (state exam) or a **Magister** (MA), which can be followed by a **Doktorat** (PhD).

## 2 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

**Was ist Ihr Gebiet?** What is your field?  
*vuss issst eer ge-beet*



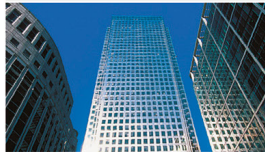
**Ich betreibe Forschungen in Biochemie.** I am doing research in biochemistry.  
*ikh be-trie-be for-shoong-en in bee-oe-khay-mee*



**Ich habe Jura studiert.** I studied law.  
*ikh hah-be yoo-ra shtoo-deert*



**Ich halte einen Vortrag über moderne Architektur.** I am giving a presentation on modern architecture.  
*ikh hul-te ie-nen vortrah ew-ber mo-dair-nee ar-khi-tek-toor*



## 3 In conversation (5 minutes)



**Guten Tag, ich bin Professor Stein.**  
*goo-ten tahk, ikh bin prof-es-sor shtien*

Hello, I'm Professor Stein.



**An welcher Universität arbeiten Sie?**  
*un vel-kher oo-nee-vair-zee-tayt ar-bie-ten zee*

What university do you work at?



**Ich bin Delegierte der Humboldt-Universität.**  
*ikh bin day-lay-ge-ter dair hoomm-bolt-oo-nee-vair-zee-tayt*

I'm the delegate from Humboldt University.

**4 Words to remember** (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and then test yourself.



**Wir haben einen Stand.**  
*veer hah-ben ie-nen shtunt*  
 We have a stand.

conference	<b>die Konferenz</b> <i>dee kon-fay-rents</i>
trade fair	<b>die Handelsmesse</b> <i>dee hun-dels-mes-se</i>
seminar	<b>das Seminar</b> <i>duss zay-mee-nahr</i>
lecture hall	<b>der Vorlesungssaal</b> <i>dair for-lay-zoongs-zahl</i>
conference room	<b>das Konferenzzimmer</b> <i>duss kon-fay-rents-tsim-mer</i>
exhibition	<b>die Ausstellung</b> <i>dee ows-shtel-loong</i>
assistant professor	<b>der Dozent(in)</b> <i>dair do-tsent(in)</i>
professor	<b>der Professor(in)</b> <i>dair pro-fes-sor(in)</i>
medicine	<b>die Medizin</b> <i>dee may-dee-tseen</i>
science	<b>die Naturwissenschaften</b> <i>dee na-toor-vis-sen-shuff-ten</i>
humanities	<b>die Geisteswissenschaften</b> <i>dee gies-tes-vis-sen-shuff-ten</i>
engineering	<b>die Technik</b> <i>dee tekh-nik</i>

**5 Say it** (2 minutes)

I'm doing research in medicine.  
 I studied humanities.  
 She's the professor.



**Was ist Ihr Gebiet?**  
*vuss isst eer ge-beet*  
 What's your field?



**Ich betreibe Forschungen in Technik.**  
*ikh be-trie-be for-shoong-en in tekh-nik*

I'm doing research in engineering.



**Wie interessant!**  
*vee in-tay-res-sunt*  
 How interesting!

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Ask "Can I...?" (pp.34-5)

Say "I want to send an e-mail." (pp.80-1)

Ask "Can you send a fax?" (pp.80-1)

# GESCHÄFTLICHES

## In business

You will receive a more friendly reception and make a good impression if you make the effort to begin a meeting with a short introduction in German, even if your vocabulary is limited. After that, all parties will probably be happy to continue the meeting in English.

## 2 Words to remember (6 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and then test yourself by concealing the German with the cover flap.

**der Zeitplan** schedule  
*dair tsiet-plahn*

**die Lieferung** delivery  
*dee lee-fe-roong*

**die Bezahlung** payment  
*dee be-tsah-loong*

**das Budget** budget  
*duss bew-jay*

**der Preis** price  
*dair priez*

**die Akte** document  
*dee ukk-te*

**die Rechnung** invoice  
*dee rekh-noong*

**die Zahlen** figures  
*dee tsah-len*

**der Kostenvoranschlag** estimate  
*dair kos-ten-for-unshlahk*

**der Gewinn** profits  
*dair ge-vinn*

**der Absatz** sales  
*dair up-zuts*

der Kunde  
*dair koonn-de*  
client



**Cultural tip** Many German companies have **Gleitzeit** (*flexible working hours*). Generally, offices start at 9 am or before, break for lunch at 12 noon, and finish at about 5 pm or earlier. In larger firms and offices, lunch is often taken in a subsidized canteen together with colleagues.

**3 Useful phrases** (6 minutes)

**Sollen wir den Vertrag unterzeichnen?**  
*zol-len veer dayn fer-trahk oon-ter-tsiekh-nen*  
 Shall we sign the contract?

**die Managerin**  
*dee man-a-je-rin*  
 executive

**der Vertrag**  
*dair fer-trahk*  
 contract



**der Bericht**  
*dair be-rikht*  
 report

Familiarize yourself with these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap to conceal the German.



**Bitte schicken Sie mir den Vertrag.**  
*bit-te shik-ken zee meer dayn fer-trahk*

Please send me the contract.



**Haben wir uns auf einen Zeitplan geeinigt?**  
*hah-ben veer oons owf ie-nen tsiet-plahn ge-ie-nikht*

Have we agreed on a schedule?



**Wann können Sie liefern?**  
*vunn kern-nen zee lee-fairn*

When can you deliver?



**Was ist das Budget?**  
*vuss isst duss bew-jay*

What's the budget?



**Können Sie mir die Rechnung schicken?**  
*kern-nen zee meer dee rekh-noong shik-ken*

Can you send me the invoice?

**4 Say it** (2 minutes)

- Can you send me the estimate?
- Have we agreed on a price?
- What are the profits?

**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**WIEDERHOLUNG**  
Review and repeat**1 At the office**

- 1 das Heftgerät  
duss heft-ge-rayt
- 2 die Lampe  
dee lum-pe
- 3 der Laptop  
dair lap-top
- 4 der Stift  
dair shtift
- 5 der Schreibtisch  
dair shriep-tish
- 6 der Notizblock  
dair no-teets-blok
- 7 die Uhr  
dee oor

**1 At the office** (4 minutes)

Name these items.

**2 Jobs**

- 1 Arzt/Ärztin  
artst/airts-tin
- 2 Klempner(in)  
klemp-ner(in)
- 3 Verkäufer(in)  
fer-koy-fer(in)
- 4 Buchhalter(in)  
bookh-hull-ter(in)
- 5 Lehrer(in)  
lay-rer(in)
- 6 Rechtsanwalt/  
Rechtsanwältin  
rekhts-un-vullt/  
rekhts-un-vel-tin

**2 Jobs** (3 minutes)

What are these jobs in German?

- 1 doctor
- 2 plumber
- 3 store clerk
- 4 accountant
- 5 teacher
- 6 lawyer





**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**3 Work** (4 minutes)

Answer these questions following the numbered English prompts.

**Bei welcher Firma arbeiten Sie?**

- ① I work for myself.

**Von welcher Universität sind Sie?**

- ② I'm at the University of Köln.

**Was ist Ihr Gebiet?**

- ③ I'm doing medical research.

**Haben wir uns auf einen Zeitplan geeinigt?**

- ④ Yes, my secretary has the schedule.

**3 Work**

① **Ich bin selbstständig.**  
*ikh bin zelpst-shten-dikh*

② **Ich bin von der Universität Köln.**  
*ikh bin fon dair oo-nee-vair-zee-tayt kewln*

③ **Ich betreibe Forschungen in der Medizin.**  
*ikh be-trie-be for-shoong-en in dair may-dee-tseen*

④ **Ja, meine Sekretärin hat den Zeitplan.**  
*yah, mye-ne zek-re-tair-in hut dayn tsiet-plahn*

**4 How much?** (4 minutes)

Answer the question with the amount shown in brackets.



- ① Was kostet der Kaffee? (€2.50)



- ② Was kostet das Zimmer? (€47)



- ③ Was kostet das Kilo Tomaten? (€3.25)



- ④ Was kostet der Parkplatz für drei Tage? (€50)

**4 How much?**

① **Das macht zwei Euro fünfzig.**  
*duss makht tsvie oy-roe fewnf-tsik*

② **Es kostet siebenundvierzig Euro.**  
*es kos-tet zee-ben-oont-feer-tsik oy-roe*

③ **Das macht drei Euro fünfundzwanzig.**  
*duss makht drie oy-roe fewnf-oont-tsvun-tsik*

④ **Er kostet fünfzig Euro.**  
*air kos-tet fewnf-tsik oy-roe*

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "I'm allergic to nuts."  
(pp.24-5)

Say the verb **haben**  
(to have) in all its forms  
(**ich, du er/sie/es, wir,**  
**ihr, sie/Sie**). (pp.14-15)

# IN DER APOTHEKE

## At the pharmacy

German pharmacies are indicated by a stylized red letter **A** for **Apotheke**. Pharmacists dispense a wide variety of medicines over the counter. They advise and can even give injections, if necessary. In larger towns, a duty roster ensures that there is always one pharmacy that is open.

## 2 Match and repeat (3 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the German words in the panel below and test yourself using the cover flap.

1 der Verband  
dair fer-bunt

2 der Sirup  
dair zee-roop

3 die Tropfen  
dee trop-fen

4 das Pflaster  
duss pflus-ter

5 die Spritze  
dee shprit-se

6 die Salbe  
dee zull-be

7 das Zäpfchen  
duss tsepf-khen

8 die Tablette  
dee tub-let-te



## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



**Guten Tag, Sie wünschen?**  
goo-ten tahk, zee  
vewn-shen

Hello. What would you like?



**Ich habe Bauchschmerzen.**  
ikh hah-be bowkh-  
shmairt-sen

I have a stomachache.



**Haben Sie Durchfall?**  
hah-ben zee doorkh-full

Do you have diarrhea?

#### 4 Words to remember (2 minutes)

In German you don't use the indefinite article *a* to describe a pain.



Ich habe Kopfschmerzen.  
*ikh hah-be kopf-shmairt-sen*  
I have a headache.

headache	<b>Kopfschmerzen</b> <i>kopf-shmairt-sen</i>
stomachache	<b>Bauchschmerzen</b> <i>bowkh-shmairt-sen</i>
diarrhea	<b>Durchfall</b> <i>doorkh-full</i>
cold (in the nose)	<b>der Schnupfen</b> <i>dair shnoop-fen</i>
cough	<b>der Husten</b> <i>dair hoos-ten</i>
sunburn	<b>der Sonnenbrand</b> <i>dair zon-nen-brunt</i>
toothache	<b>Zahnschmerzen</b> <i>tsahn-shmairt-sen</i>

#### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

I have a cold.

Do you have that as an ointment?

Do you have a cough?

7 suppository

8 tablet

#### 6 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

I have a sunburn. **Ich hab en einen Sonnenbrand.**  
*ikh hah-be ie-nen zon-nen-brunt*

Do you have that as a syrup? **Haben Sie das auch als Sirup?**  
*hah-ben zee duss owkh ulls zee-roop*

I'm allergic to penicillin. **Ich bin allergisch gegen Penizillin.**  
*ikh bin ull-lair-gish gay-gen pay-nee-tsee-leen*



Nein, aber ich habe auch Kopfschmerzen.  
*nine, ah-ber ikh hah-be owkh kopf-shmairt-sen*

No, but I also have a headache.



Nehmen Sie dies.  
*nay-men zee dees*

Take this.



Haben Sie das auch als Tabletten?  
*hah-ben zee duss owkh ulls tub-let-ten*

Do you have that as tablets?

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "I have a toothache" and "I have a sunburn." (pp.88-9)

Say the German for "red," "green," "black," and "yellow." (pp.74-5)

# DER KÖRPER

## The body

In German many health-related expressions are reflexive—that is, the equivalent of *I am not feeling well* in German is **Ich fühle mich nicht wohl** (literally, *I am not feeling myself well*). As in English, the reflexive pronoun (*myself, yourself, etc.*) changes, depending on the context.

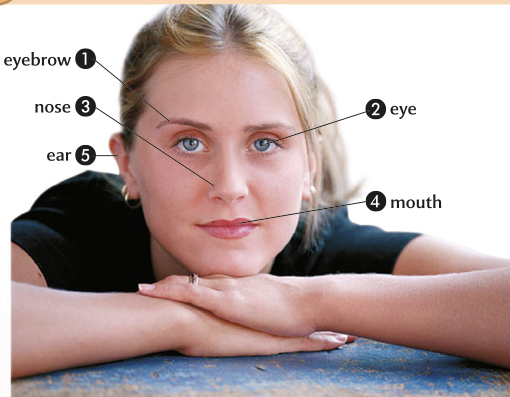
## 2 Match and repeat (6 minutes)

Match the numbered parts of the body with the list below.

- 1 die Hand  
dee hunt
- 2 der Kopf  
dair kopf
- 3 die Schulter  
dee shooh-ter
- 4 der Ellbogen  
dair el-bo-gen
- 5 das Haar, die Haare  
duss hahr, dee hah-re
- 6 der Arm  
dair arm
- 7 der Hals  
dair hulls
- 8 die Brust  
dee broost
- 9 der Bauch  
dair bowkh
- 10 das Bein  
duss bine
- 11 das Knie  
duss k-nee
- 12 der Fuß  
dair fooss



### 3 Match and repeat (3 minutes)



Match the numbered facial features with the list below.

- 1 die Augenbraue  
dee ow-gen-brow-e
- 2 das Auge  
duss ow-ge
- 3 die Nase  
dee nah-ze
- 4 der Mund  
dair moont
- 5 das Ohr  
duss ohr

### 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

I have a pain in my back.

**Ich habe Schmerzen im Rücken**  
ikh hah-be shmairt-sen im rewk-ken



I have a rash on my arm.

**Ich habe einen Ausschlag am Arm.**  
ikh hah-be ie-nen ows-shluk um arm



I don't feel well.

**Ich fühle mich nicht wohl.**  
ikh few-le mikh nikht voel

### 5 Put into practice (2 minutes)



Join in this conversation and test yourself using the cover flap.

**Was ist denn los?**  
vuss iss denn loes

**Ich fühle mich nicht wohl.**  
ikh few-le mikh nikht voel

What's the matter?

Say: I'm not feeling well.



**Wo tut es denn weh?**  
voe toot es den vayh

**Ich haben Schmerzen in der Schulter.**  
ikh hah-be shmairt-sen in dair shool-ter

Where does it hurt?

Say: I have a pain in my shoulder.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "I need some tablets" and "He needs some ointment." (pp.60-1 and pp.88-9)

What is the German for "I don't have a son"? (pp.10-15)

# BEIM ARZT

## At the doctor

German doctors are titled according to their specialist qualifications, such as **Internist** (*internal medicine*) and **Kardiologe** (*heart specialist*). A general practitioner is known as **praktischer Arzt**. In most cases you'll need an appointment, or you can visit the hospital outpatient department.

## 2 Useful phrases you may hear (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap to conceal the German.

**Es ist nichts Ernsthaftes.**  
*es isst nikhts airnst-huff-tes*

It's not serious.

**Wir müssen ein paar Tests machen.**  
*veer mews-sen ine pahr tests ma-khen*

We need to do a few tests.

**Sie haben eine Niereninfektion.**  
*zee hah-ben ie-ne nee-ren-infek-tsee-oen*

You have an infection in your kidney.

**Sie müssen ins Krankenhaus gehen.**  
*zee mews-sen ins krunk-en-hows gay-en*

You need to go to the hospital.

**Nehmen Sie irgend-welche Medikamente?**  
*nay-men zee ir-gent-vel-khe may-dee-ka-men-te*  
Are you taking any medication?



## 3 In conversation (5 minutes)



**Was ist denn los?**  
*vuss isst den loes*

What's the matter?



**Ich habe Schmerzen in der Brust.**  
*ikh hah-be shmairt-sen in dair broost*

I have a pain in my chest.



**Ich werde Sie untersuchen.**  
*ikh vair-de zee oon-ter-zoo-khen*

I'll examine you.

## 4 Useful phrases you may need to say (4 minutes)



**Ich bin schwanger.**  
*ikh bin shvun-ger*  
I'm pregnant.

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

I am diabetic. **Ich bin Diabetiker(in).**  
*ikh bin dee-ar-bay-ti-kair(in)*

I am epileptic. **Ich bin Epileptiker(in).**  
*ikh bin ay-pee-lep-ti-kair(in)*

I have asthma. **Ich habe Asthma.**  
*ikh hah-be ast-ma*

I have a heart condition. **Ich bin herzkrank.**  
*ikh bin hairts-krunk*

I have a fever. **Ich habe Fieber.**  
*ikh hah-be fee-ber*

It's urgent. **Es ist dringend.**  
*es isst dring-ent*

I feel faint. **Ich fühle mich schwach.**  
*ikh few-le mikh shvakh*

I feel sick. **Mir ist schlecht.**  
*meer isst shlekht*

### Cultural tip

Before you go to Germany, find out if your health insurance covers emergency medical care in Europe; if it doesn't, purchase a travel medical insurance policy.



## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

It's serious.

My son needs to go to the hospital.

It's not urgent.



**Ist es etwas Ernsthaftes?**  
*isst es et-vuss airnst-huff-tes*

Is it serious?



**Nein, nur Verdauungsbeschwerden.**  
*nine, noor fer-dow-oongs-be-shvair-den*

No, only indigestion.



**Ein Glück!**  
*ine glewkk*

What a relief!

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "how long" as in "how long is the trip?" (pp.42-3)

Ask "Do I need tests?" (pp.92-3)

Say "mouth" and "head." (pp.90-1)

# IM KRANKENHAUS

## At the hospital

It is useful to know a few basic phrases relating to hospitals for use in an emergency or in case you need to visit a friend or colleague in hospital. A *ward* in hospital is known as **die Station** and the equivalent of the *outpatient department* is known as **die Ambulanz**.

## 2 Useful phrases (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these phrases. Conceal the German with the cover flap and test yourself.

**Wann ist Besuchszeit?** What are the  
*vunn isst be-zookhs-tsiet* visiting hours?

**Wie lange wird das dauern?** How long will it take?  
*vee lun-ge virt duss dow-ern*

**Tut das weh?** Will it hurt?  
*toot duss vayh*

**Bitte legen Sie sich hier hin.** Please lie down here.  
*bit-te lay-gen zee zikh heer hin*

**Sie dürfen nichts essen,** You must not eat.  
*zee dewrf-en nikhts es-sen*

**Bewegen Sie nicht den Kopf.** Don't move your head.  
*be-vay-gen zee nikht dayn kopf*

**Bitte öffnen Sie Ihren Mund.** Please open your mouth.  
*bit-te erf-nen zee ee-ren moont*

**Wir müssen eine Blutprobe machen.** We'll have to do a blood test.  
*veer mew-sen ie-ne bloot-proe-be ma-khen*

**Geht es Ihnen besser?**  
*gayt es ee-nen bes-ser*  
Are you feeling better?



**Wo ist das Wartezimmer?**  
*voe isst duss var-te-tsim-mer*  
Where is the waiting room?

**die intravenöse Infusion**  
*dee in-tra-vay-ner-ze*  
*in-foo-zee-oen*  
intravenous drip





### 3 Words to remember (4 minutes)



**Ihre Röntgenaufnahme ist normal.**  
*ee-re rernt-gen-owf-nahme isst nor-mal*  
 Your X-ray is normal.

Memorize these words and test yourself using the cover flap.

emergency department	<b>die Unfallstation</b> <i>dee oon-full-shtah-tsee-oen</i>
X-ray department	<b>die Röntgenabteilung</b> <i>dee rernt-gen-up-tie-loong</i>
children's ward	<b>die Kinderstation</b> <i>dee kin-der-shtah-tsee-oen</i>
operating room	<b>der Operationsaal (der OP)</b> <i>dair o-pay-rah-tsee-oens-zahl (dair oe-pay)</i>
hall	<b>der Gang</b> <i>dair gung</i>
stairs	<b>die Treppe</b> <i>dee trep-pe</i>

### 4 Put into practice (3 minutes)

Join in this conversation. Read the German on the left and follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.



**Sie haben eine Entzündung.**  
*zee hah-ben ie-ne ent-tsewn-doong*

You have an infection.

Ask: Will you need to do tests?

**Müssen Sie Untersuchungen machen?**

*mews-sen zee oon-ter-zoo-khoong-en ma-khen*



**Zuerst machen wir eine Blutprobe.**  
*tsoo-airst ma-khen veer ie-ne bloot-proe-be*

First we will do a blood test.

Ask: Will it hurt?

**Tut das weh?**  
*toot duss vayh*

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

Will you need to do a blood test?

Where is the children's ward?

**Nein, keine Angst.**  
*nine, kie-ne unkst*

No. Don't worry.

Ask: How long will it take?

**Wie lange wird das dauern?**  
*vee lun-ge virt duss dow-ern*

## Antworten

Answers (Cover with flap)

# WIEDERHOLUNG

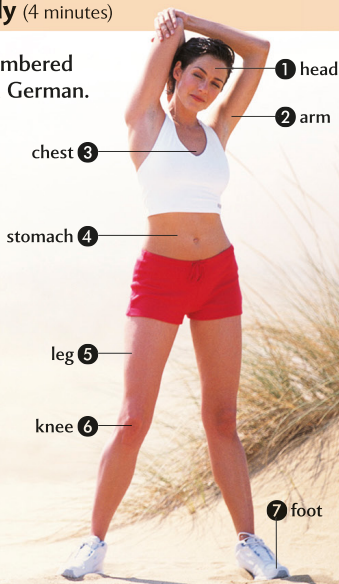
## Review and repeat

### 1 The body

- 1 der Kopf  
*dair kopf*
- 2 der Arm  
*dair arm*
- 3 die Brust  
*dee broost*
- 4 der Bauch  
*dair bowkh*
- 5 das Bein  
*duss bine*
- 6 das Knie  
*duss k-nee*
- 7 der Fuß  
*dair fooss*

### 1 The body (4 minutes)

Name the numbered body parts in German.



### 2 On the phone

- 1 Ich möchte bitte Venny Gerlach sprechen.  
*ikh merkh-te bit-te ven-nee gair-lakh shpre-ken*
- 2 Horst Richter von der Druckerei Gohl.  
*horst rikh-ter fon dair drook-er-ie goel*
- 3 Kann ich eine Nachricht hinterlassen?  
*kunn ikh ie-ne nahkh-rikht hin-ter-luss-sen*
- 4 Der Termin für Montag elf Uhr ist in Ordnung.  
*dair terr-meen fewr mohn-tahk elf oor iss in ord-noong*

### 2 On the phone (4 minutes)

You are confirming an appointment with a business contact on the telephone. Join in the conversation, replying in German following the English prompts.

- Hello, Firma Apex.**
- 1 I'd like to speak to Venny Gerlach.  
**Ja, mit wem spreche ich?**
  - 2 Horst Richter of Gohl Printers.  
**Es tut mir Leid, da ist besetzt.**
  - 3 Can I leave a message?  
**Aber selbstverständlich.**
  - 4 The appointment on Monday at 11 am is fine.



**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**3 Clothing** (3 minutes)

Say the German words for the numbered items of clothing.

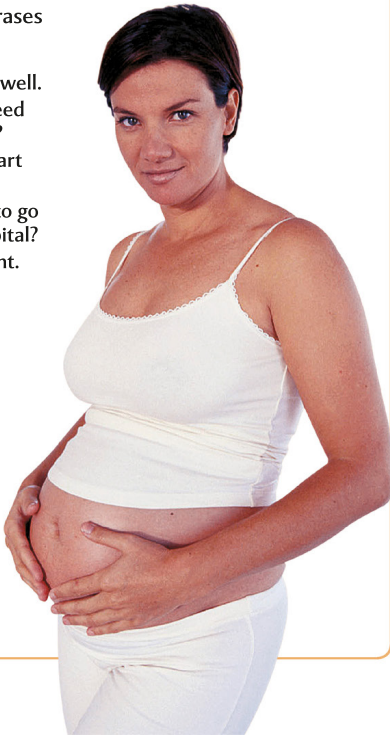
**3 Clothing**

- 1 die Krawatte  
*dee kra-vutt-te*
- 2 die Jacke  
*dee yuk-ke*
- 3 die Hose  
*dee hoe-ze*
- 4 der Rock  
*dair rok*
- 5 die Schuhe  
*dee shoo-e*
- 6 die Strumpfhose  
*dee shtroompf-hoe-ze*

**4 At the doctor's** (4 minutes)

Say these phrases in German.

- 1 I don't feel well.
- 2 Will you need to do tests?
- 3 I have a heart condition.
- 4 Do I need to go to the hospital?
- 5 I'm pregnant.

**4 At the doctor's**

- 1 Ich fühle mich nicht wohl.  
*ikh fewh-le mikh nikht voel*
- 2 Müssen Sie Untersuchungen machen?  
*mews-sen zee oon-ter-zoo-khoong-en ma-khen*
- 3 Ich bin herzkrank.  
*ikh bin hairts-krunk*
- 4 Muss ich ins Krankenhaus gehen?  
*mooss ikh ins krunk-en-hows gay-en*
- 5 Ich bin schwanger.  
*ikh bin shvun-ger*

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say the months of the year in German. (pp.28-9)

Ask "Is there...?" (pp.48-9)

# ZU HAUSE

## At home

Most Germans live in *rented apartments* (**die Wohnung**); relatively few own their homes (**das Eigenheim**). The size of a dwelling is given in square meters and described in terms of the number of rooms in addition to kitchen and bathroom: **2 ZKB** means **2 Zimmer, Küche, Badezimmer**.

## 2 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the list and test yourself using the flap.

- 1 das Dach  
duss dukh
- 2 der Schornstein  
dair shorn-shtine
- 3 die Dachrinne  
dee dukh-rin-ne
- 4 der Blumenkasten  
dair bloo-men-kass-ten
- 5 die Mauer  
dee mow-er
- 6 das Fenster  
duss fens-ter
- 7 die Tür  
dee tewr
- 8 die Straße  
dee shtrah-se



wall 5

window 6

door 7



**Conversational tip** The German word for a single-family dwelling is **Einfamilienhaus** (*one-family house*). A duplex is called a **Zweifamilienhaus** (*two-family house*), while a row house is called a **Reihenhaus** (*house in a row*). The *downtown area* of a city or town is the **Innenstadt**, and a *suburb* is a **Vorstadt** or **Vorort**.

**3 Words to remember** (4 minutes)



Wie hoch ist die monatliche Miete?  
 vee hoekh issst dee mo-naht-li-khe mee-te  
 What is the rent per month?

3 gutter

4 window box

8 street

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

room	<b>das Zimmer</b> duss tsim-mer
floor	<b>der Fußboden</b> dair foos-bo-den
ceiling	<b>die Decke</b> dee dek-ke
bedroom	<b>das Schlafzimmer</b> duss shlahf-tsim-mer
bathroom	<b>das Badezimmer</b> duss bah-de-tsim-mer
kitchen	<b>die Küche</b> dee kew-khe
dining room	<b>das Esszimmer</b> duss ess-tsim-mer
living room	<b>das Wohnzimmer</b> duss vohn-tsim-mer
basement	<b>der Keller</b> dair kel-ler
attic	<b>der Dachboden</b> dair dukh-boe-den

**4 Useful phrases** (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and test yourself.



Gibt es eine Garage?  
 geept es ie-ne ga-ra-je

Is there a garage?



Ab wann ist es frei?  
 up vunn issst es frie

When is it available?



Ist es möbliert?  
 issst es mer-bleert

Is it furnished?

**5 Say it** (2 minutes)

- Is there a dining room?
- Is it large?
- Is it available in July?

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

What is the German for “desk” (pp.80-1), “bed” (pp.60-1), and “window”? (pp.98-9)

How do you say “soft,” “beautiful,” and “big”? (pp.64-5)

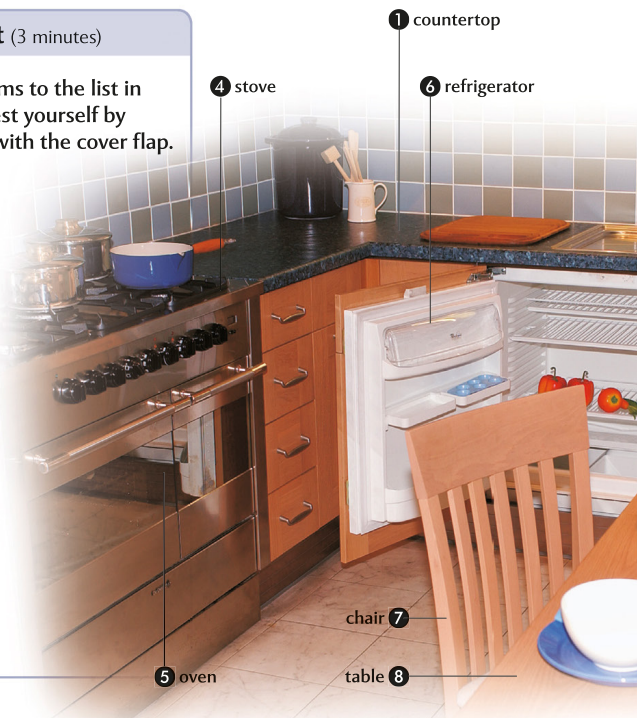
# IM HAUS In the house

If you're renting an apartment or a house in Germany, the rent is often described as **kalt** (cold). This means that services such as electricity have to be paid for in addition to the basic rent; be sure to check this in advance. Furnished apartments in vacation resorts are known as **Ferienwohnung**.

## 2 Match and repeat (3 minutes)

Match the numbered items to the list in the panel below. Then test yourself by concealing the German with the cover flap.

- 1 die Arbeitsfläche  
dee ar-biets-fly-khe
- 2 das Spülbecken  
duss shpewl-bek-ken
- 3 die Mikrowelle  
dee mee-kro-vel-le
- 4 der Backofen  
dair bak-oe-fen
- 5 der Herd  
dair hairt
- 6 der Kühlschrank  
dair kewl-shrunk
- 7 der Stuhl  
dair shtooill
- 8 der Tisch  
dair tish

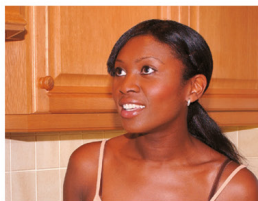


## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



Das ist der Herd.  
duss isst dair hairt

This is the stove.



Gibt es eine Geschirrspülmaschine?  
geept es ie-ne ge-sheerr-spewl-mah-shee-ne

Is there a dishwasher?



Ja, und der Gefrierschrank ist groß.  
yah, oont dair ge-freer-shrunk isst groes

Yes, and the freezer is big.

## 4 Words to remember (2 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.



**Die Couch ist neu.**  
*dee kowtch isst noy*  
The sofa is new.

sink 2

microwave 3



wardrobe **der Schrank**  
*dair shrunk*

armchair **der Sessel**  
*dair zes-sel*

carpet **der Teppich**  
*dair tep-pikh*

bathtub **die Badewanne**  
*dee bah-de-vunn-ne*

toilet **die Toilette (das WC)**  
*dee twah-let-te (duss vay-tsay)*

bathroom sink **das Waschbecken**  
*duss vush-bek-ken*

curtains **die Gardine**  
*dee gar-dee-ne*

## 5 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself.

The stove doesn't work. **Der Herd funktioniert nicht.**  
*dair hairt foonk-tsee-oe-neert nikht*

I don't like the drapes. **Die Gardinen gefallen mir nicht.**  
*dee gar-dee-nen ge-fall-en meer nikht*

Is electricity included? **Ist der Strom inbegriffen?**  
*isst dair shtroem in-be-grif-fen*

## 6 Say it (2 minutes)

Is there a microwave?

I like the carpet.

The bathroom is beautiful!



**Ist das Spülbecken neu?**  
*isst duss spewl-bek-ken noy*  
Is the sink new?



**Und hier ist die Waschmaschine.**  
*oont heer isst dee vush-mah-shee-ne*

And here's the washing machine.



**Die Kacheln sind schön!**  
*dee ka-kheln zint shern*  
The tiles are beautiful!

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "I need" and "you need." (pp.92-3)

What is the German for "day" and "month"? (pp.28-9)

Ask "Is there a garage?" (pp.98-9)

# DER GARTEN

## The backyard

Many Germans who live in apartments rent community garden plots. But rather than just growing fruits and vegetables there, they often turn these into attractive gardens with extensive flowerbeds and ponds as well as terraces, decks, and barbecue grills for casual entertaining.

## 2 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

**der Rasenmäher**    lawnmower  
*dair rah-zen-may-er*

**die Gabel**    fork  
*dee gah-bel*

**der Spaten**    spade  
*dair shpah-ten*

**der Rechen**    rake  
*dair re-khen*

**das Gartencenter**    garden center  
*duss gar-ten-tsen-ter*

terrace 1

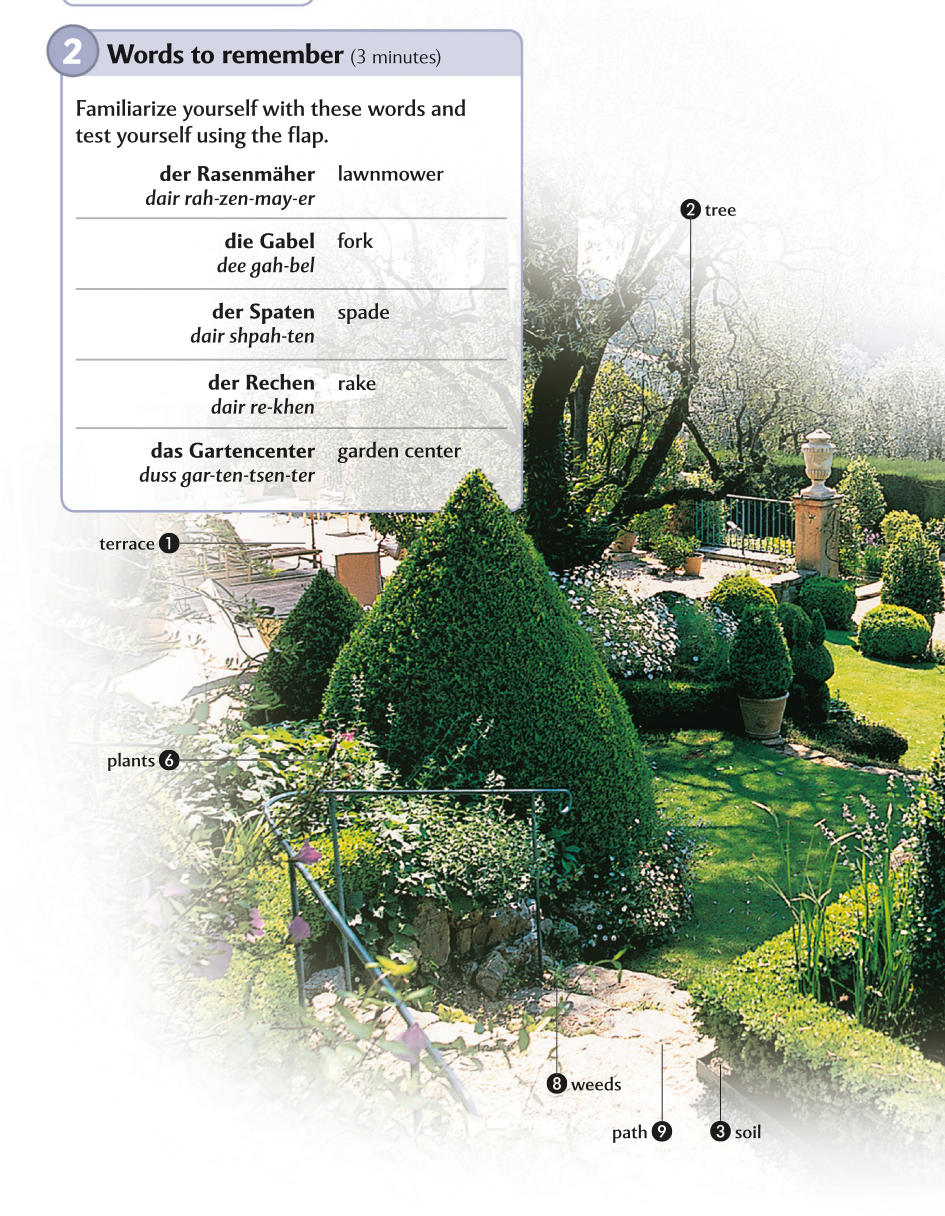
plants 6

2 tree

8 weeds

path 9

3 soil





### 3 Useful phrases (4 minutes)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

The gardener comes once a week.

**Der Gärtner kommt einmal in der Woche.**  
*dair gairt-ner komt ine-mahl in dair vo-khe*



Can you please mow the lawn?

**Können Sie bitte den Rasen mähen?**  
*kern-nen zee bit-te dayn rah-zen may-en*



Is the yard private?

**Ist der Garten privat?**  
*isst dair gar-ten pree-vaht*



The garden needs watering.

**Der Garten muss gegossen werden.**  
*dair gar-ten mooss ge-gos-sen vair-den*

5 hedge

4 lawn

### 4 Match and repeat (5 minutes)

Match the numbered items in this garden to the words in the panel.

- 1 die Terrasse  
*dee ter-ras-se*
- 2 der Baum  
*dair bowm*
- 3 die Erde  
*dee air-de*
- 4 der Rasen  
*dair rah-zen*
- 5 die Hecke  
*dee hek-ke*
- 6 die Pflanzen  
*dee pflun-tsen*
- 7 die Blumen  
*dee bloo-men*
- 8 das Unkraut  
*duss oon-krowt*
- 9 der Weg  
*dair vayk*
- 10 das Blumenbeet  
*duss bloo-men-bayt*

### 5 Say it (2 minutes)

The lawn needs watering.

Are there any trees?

The gardener comes on Fridays.

7 flowers

10 flowerbed

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "My name's John".  
(pp.8-9)

How do you say "Don't worry"? (pp.94-5)

What's "your" in German? (pp.12-13)

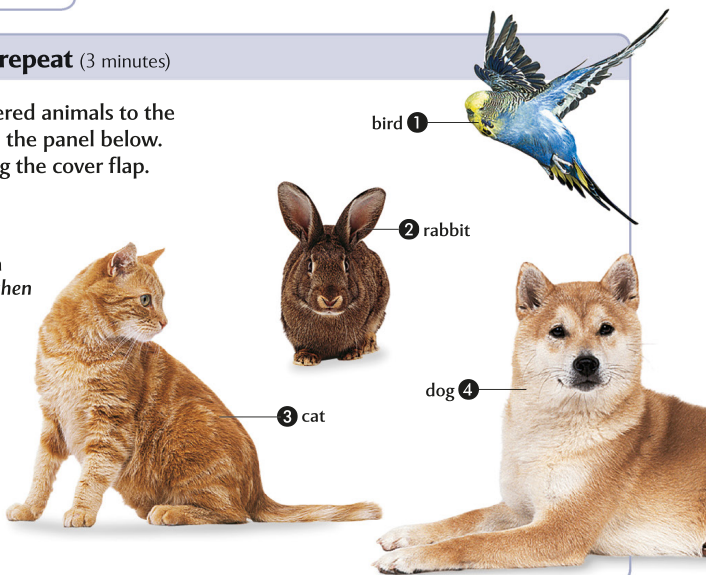
# DIE HAUSTIERE Pets

Many German families have pet animals—dogs and cats are especially popular—and veterinary services are generally of a high standard. Consult your vet for details on the necessary vaccinations and paperwork if you are considering traveling to Germany with your pet.

## 2 Match and repeat (3 minutes)

Match the numbered animals to the German words in the panel below. Test yourself using the cover flap.

- 1 der Vogel  
*dair foe-gel*
- 2 das Kaninchen  
*duss kah-nee-n-khen*
- 3 die Katze  
*dee kut-se*
- 4 der Hund  
*dair hoont*
- 5 der Hamster  
*dair hums-ter*
- 6 der Fisch  
*dair fish*



## 3 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

**Ist dieser Hund gutartig?** Is this dog friendly?  
*isst dee-zer hoont*  
*goot-ar-tikh*

**Kann ich meinen Hund mitbringen?** Can I bring my dog?  
*kunn ikh mie-nen hoont*  
*mit-bring-en*

**Ich habe Angst vor Katzen.** I'm afraid of cats.  
*ikh hah-be unkst foer kut-tsen*

**Mein Hund beißt nicht.** My dog doesn't bite.  
*mine hoont bieisst nikht*

**Diese Katze hat Flöhe.**  
*dee-ze kut-se hut fler-we.*  
This cat has fleas.



**Cultural tip** Many dogs in Germany are working dogs and you may encounter them tethered or roaming free. Approach rural houses with particular care. Look out for warning notices such as **Warnung vor dem Hunde!** (*Beware of the dog*).



Meinem Hund geht es nicht gut.  
mie-nem hoont gayt es nikht goot  
My dog is not well.



5 hamster



6 fish



#### 4 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

basket **der Korb**  
dair korp

cage **der Käfig**  
dair kay-fik

bowl **die Schüssel**  
dee shews-sel

collar **das Halsband**  
duss hulls-bunt

leash **die Leine**  
dee lie-ne

vet **der Tierarzt**  
dair teer-artist

vaccination **die Impfung**  
dee imp-foong

pet passport **der Tierpass**  
dair teer-puss

fleas **die Flöhe**  
die fler-we

#### 5 Put into practice (3 minutes)



Join in this conversation. Read the German on the left and follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.

**Ist das Ihr Hund?** Ja, er heißt Hasso.  
isst duss eer hoont yah, er hiesst hus-so

Is this your dog?

Say: Yes, he's called Hasso.



**Ich habe Angst vor Hunden.** Keine Angst, er ist gutartig.  
ikh hah-be unkst foer hoon-den kie-ne unkst, er isst goot-ar-tikh

I'm afraid of dogs.

Say: Don't worry, he's well-behaved.

## Antworten

Answers (Cover with flap)

# WIEDERHOLUNG

## Review and repeat

### 1 Colors

- 1 schwarz  
shvarts
- 2 weiß  
vies
- 3 rot  
roet
- 4 grün  
grewn
- 5 gelb  
gelp



### 1 Colors (4 minutes)

Complete the sentences with the German word for the color in brackets.

- 1 Haben Sie diese Jacke in \_\_\_\_\_. (black)
- 2 Ich nehme den Rock in \_\_\_\_\_. (white)
- 3 Haben Sie die Hose in \_\_\_\_\_? (red)
- 4 Nein, aber ich habe eine in \_\_\_\_\_. (green)
- 5 Ich möchte diese Schuhe in \_\_\_\_\_. (yellow)

### 2 Kitchen

- 1 der Herd  
dair hairt
- 2 der Kühlschrank  
dair kewl-shrunk
- 3 das Spülbecken  
duss spewl-bek-ken
- 4 die Mikrowelle  
dee mee-kro-vel-le
- 5 der Backofen  
dair bak-oe-fen
- 6 der Stuhl  
dair shtool
- 7 der Tisch  
dair tish

### 2 Kitchen (4 minutes)

Say the German words for the numbered items.



## Antworten

Answers (Cover with flap)

## 3 House (4 minutes)

You are being shown around a house in Germany. Join in the conversation, replying in German following the numbered English prompts.

**Hier ist das Wohnzimmer.**

1 What a nice sofa.

**Ja, und da ist auch eine große Küche.**

2 How many rooms?

**Es gibt drei Zimmer.**

3 Do you have a garage?

**Nein, aber da ist ein großer Garten.**

4 When is the house available?

**Ab Juli.**

5 What is the rent per month?



## 3 House

1 Was für eine schöne Couch!  
*vuss fewr ie-ne shern-ne kowtch*

2 Wie viele Zimmer gibt es?  
*vee fee-le tsim-mer geept es*

3 Haben Sie eine Garage?  
*hah-ben zee ie-ne ga-ra-je*

4 Ab wann ist das Haus frei?  
*up vunn isst duss hows frie*

5 Wie hoch ist die monatliche Miete?  
*vee hoekh isst dee mo-naht-li-khe mee-te*

## 4 At home (3 minutes)

Say the German for the following items:

- 1 washing machine
- 2 sofa
- 3 attic
- 4 dining room
- 5 tree
- 6 garden



## 4 At home

1 die Waschmaschine  
*dee vush-mah-shee-ne*

2 die Couch  
*dee kowtch*

3 der Dachboden  
*dair dukh-boe-den*

4 das Esszimmer  
*duss es-tsim-mer*

5 der Baum  
*dair bowm*

6 der Garten  
*dair gar-ten*

microwave 4

3 sink



## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Ask "Where can I find the bank?" (pp.68-9)

What's the German for "passport"?

(pp.54-5)  
Ask "What time?"  
(pp.30-1)

# BANK UND POST

## Bank and post office

German post offices have machines that print stamps on demand, weigh packages automatically, and explain their services in several languages. Most banks have ATMs with multiple language options. However, banks also offer a teller service, if you need help.

## 2 Words to remember: post (3 minutes)

**der Umschlag** envelope  
*dair oom-shlahk*

**die Postkarte** postcard  
*dee posst-kar-te*

**das Paket** package  
*duss pa-kayt*

**per Luftpost** by air mail  
*pair looft-posst*

**per Einschreiben** by registered mail  
*pair ine-shrie-ben*

**der Briefkasten** mailbox  
*dair breef-kuss-ten*

**die Postleitzahl** postal (ZIP) code  
*dee posst-lite-tsahl*

**der Briefträger** mail carrier  
*dair breef-tray-ger*

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the cover flap to conceal the German on the left.



**die Briefmarken**  
*dee breef-mar-ken*  
stamps

**Wie hoch ist das Porto nach England?**  
*vee hoekh isst duss por-toe nahkh eng-land*  
What is the postage to England?

## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



**Ich möchte Geld abheben.**  
*ikh merkh-te gelt up-hay-ben*

I'd like to withdraw some money.



**Können Sie sich ausweisen?**  
*kern-nen zee zikh ows-vie-zen*

Do you have any ID?



**Ja, ich habe meinen Pass dabei.**  
*Yah, ikh hah-be mye-nen puss da-bie*

Yes, I have my passport with me.

**4 Words to remember: bank** (2 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the cover flap.



**Wie kann ich zahlen?**  
*vee kunn ikh tsah-len*  
 How can I pay?

PIN	<b>die Geheimnummer</b> <i>dee ge-hime-noom-mer</i>
bank	<b>die Bank</b> <i>dee bunk</i>
teller/cashier	<b>der Kassierer(in)</b> <i>dair kuss-see-rer(in)</i>
ATM	<b>der Geldautomat</b> <i>dair gelt-ow-to-maht</i>
bills (notes)	<b>die Banknoten</b> <i>dee bunk-noe-ten</i>
coin	<b>die Münze</b> <i>dee mewn-tse</i>
credit card	<b>die Kreditkarte</b> <i>dee kray-deet-kar-te</i>

**5 Useful phrases** (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

**6 Say it** (2 minutes)

I'd like a stamp.  
 Where can I find a mailbox?  
 I have ID.

I'd like to change some money.	<b>Ich möchte Geld wechseln.</b> <i>ikh merkh-te gelt wek-seln</i>
What is the exchange rate?	<b>Wie ist der Wechselkurs?</b> <i>vee isst dair wek-sel-koors</i>
I'd like to withdraw some money.	<b>Ich möchte Geld abheben.</b> <i>ikh merkh-te gelt up-hay-ben</i>



**Bitte geben Sie Ihre Geheimzahl ein**  
*bit-te gay-ben zee ee-re ge-hime-tsahl ine*  
 Please type in your PIN.



**Muss ich auch unterschreiben?**  
*mooss ikh owkh oon-ter-shrie-ben*  
 Do I need to sign, too?



**Nein, das ist nicht nötig.**  
*nine, duss isst nikht ner-tikh*  
 No, that's not necessary.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

What is the German for “doesn’t work”? (pp.60-1)

What’s the German for “today” and “tomorrow”? (pp.28-9)

# DIENSTLEISTUNGEN Services

You can combine the German words on these pages with the vocabulary you learned in week 10 to help you explain basic problems and cope with asking for most repairs. When arranging building work or a repair, it’s a good idea to agree on the price and method of payment in advance.

## 2 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

**Klempner(in)** plumber  
*klemp-ner(in)*

**Elektriker(in)** electrician  
*ay-lek-tree-ker(in)*

**Mechaniker(in)** mechanic  
*me-khah-nee-ker(in)*

**Bauarbeiter(in)** builder  
*bow-ar-bie-ter(in)*

**die Putzfrau** cleaner  
*dee poots-frow*

**Maler(in)** painter/decorator  
*mah-ler(in)*

**Schreiner(in)** carpenter  
*shrie-ner(in)*

**die Telefonnummer** telephone number  
*dee tay-lay-foen-noom-mer*

**der Radschüssel**  
*dair raht-shlews-sel*  
tire iron



**Ich brauche keinen Mechaniker.**  
*ikh brow-khe kie-nen me-khah-nee-ker.*  
I don't need a mechanic.

## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



**Die Waschmaschine funktioniert nicht.**  
*dee vush-mah-shee-ne  
foonk-tsee-oen-eert nikht*

The washing machine is not working.



**Ja, die Pumpe ist kaputt.**  
*yah, dee poom-pe isst  
ka-poott*

Yes, the pipe is broken.



**Können Sie die reparieren?**  
*kern-nen zee dee  
re-pah-ree-ren*

Can you repair it?



## 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)



**Wo kann ich das reparieren lassen?**  
*voe kunn ikh duss re-pah-ree-ren luss-sen*  
 Where can I get this repaired?

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

Can you clean the bathroom?  
**Können Sie das Badezimmer putzen?**  
*kern-nen zee duss bah-de-tsim-mer poot-tsen*

Can you repair the boiler?  
**Können Sie den Boiler reparieren?**  
*kern-nen zee dayn boi-ler re-pah-ree-ren*

Do you know a good electrician?  
**Kennen Sie einen guten Elektriker?**  
*ken-nen zee ie-nen goo-ten ay-lek-tree-ker*

## 5 Put into practice (4 minutes)



Learn these phrases. Cover up the text on the right and complete the dialogue in German. Check your answers and repeat if necessary.

**Ihr Tor ist kaputt.**  
*eer tohr isst ka-poott*  
 Your gate is broken.

Ask: Do you know a good handyman?

**Kennen Sie einen guten Handwerker?**  
*ken-nen zee ie-nen goo-ten hunt-ver-ker*

**Ja, es gibt einen im Ort.**  
*yah, es geept ie-nen im ort*

Yes there is one in the village.

**Haben Sie die Telefonnummer?**  
*hah-ben zee dee tay-lay-foen-noom-mer*

Ask: Do you have the telephone number?



**Nein, Sie brauchen eine neue.**  
*nine, zee brow-khen ie-ne noy-e*

No, you'll need a new one.



**Können Sie das heute machen?**  
*kern-nen zee duss hoy-te ma-khen*

Can you do it today?



**Nein, ich komme morgen wieder.**  
*nine, ikh kom-me mor-gen vee-der*

No. I'll come back tomorrow.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say the days of the week in German. (pp.28-9)

How do you say “handyman”? (pp.110-11)

Say “It’s 9:30,” “10:45,” and “12:00.” (pp.10-11, pp.30-1)

# KOMMEN

## To come

The verb **kommen** (to come) is another important verb. Apart from its literal meaning, it can mean *happen* as in *how come?* It can be combined with adverbs such as **her** (here) or **herein** (in). It also occurs in many expressions, such as **das kommt davon, dass...** (That’s because...).

## 2 Kommen: to come (6 minutes)

Say the different forms of **kommen** (to come) aloud. Use the cover flap to test yourself and, when you are confident, practice the sample sentences below.

**ich komme** I come  
*ikh kom-me*

**du kommst** you come (informal)  
*doe komst*

**er/sie/es kommt** he/she/it comes  
*air/zee/es komt*

**wir kommen** we come  
*veer kom-men*

**ihr kommt** you come  
*eer komt* (informal, plural)

**sie/Sie kommen** they come/you  
*zee kom-men* come (plural or formal)

**Ich komme aus London.** I come from  
*ikh kom-me ows london* London.

**Wir kommen jeden  
Dienstag.** We come every  
*veer kom-men* Tuesday.  
*yay-den deens-tahk*

**Sie kommen mit  
dem Zug.** They come  
*zee kom-men mit* by train.  
*daym tsook*



**Er kommt aus China.**  
*air komt ows khee-nah*  
He comes from China.



**Conversational tip** **Kommen** is used in many (usually friendly) commands such as **komm her** (come here) or **kommen Sie herein** (come in). It also often appears together with another verb, when in English we might link the two verbs with *and*, as in: **komm setz dich** (come and sit down), **kommt essen** (come and eat).



### 3 Useful phrases (4 minutes)



**Bitte setzen Sie sich.**  
bit-te zet-sen zee zikh  
Come and sit down.

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

When can I come? **Wann kann ich kommen?**  
vunn kunn ikh kom-men

Where does she come from? **Woher kommt sie?**  
vo-hair komt zee

The cleaner comes every Monday. **Die Putzfrau kommt jeden Montag.**  
dee poots-frow komt yay-den moen-tahk

Come with me. (informal/formal) **Komm mit/ Kommen Sie mit.**  
kom mit/ kom-men zee mit

### 4 Put into practice (4 minutes)



Join in this conversation. Read the German on the left and follow the instructions to make your reply. Then test yourself by concealing the answers with the cover flap.

**Guten Tag, Friseursalon Hannelore.**  
goo-ten tahk, fri-zer-zah-long hun-ne-loe-re

**Ich hätte gern einen Termin.**  
ikh het-te gairn ie-nen terr-meen

Hello, this is Hannelore's hair salon.

Say: I'd like an appointment.

**Wann möchten Sie kommen?**  
vunn merkh-ten zee kom-men

**Kann ich heute kommen?**  
kunn ikh hoy-te kom-men

When would you like to come?

Say: Can I come today?



**Natürlich. Um wieviel Uhr?**  
na-tewr-likh. oomm vee-feel oor

**Um halb elf.**  
oomm hulp elf

Yes, of course. What time?

Say: At 10.30.



## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

What's the German for "big/tall" and "small/short"? (pp.64-5)

Say "The room is big" and "The bed is small." (pp.64-5)

# POLIZEI UND VERBRECHEN

## Police and crime

German traffic police (**Verkehrspolizei**) carry out checks and impose fines for violations of the traffic regulations. If you are the victim of a crime or are in a traffic accident in Germany, report it to the nearest police station.

## 2 Words to remember: crime (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words.

**der Diebstahl** robbery  
*dair deep-shtahl*

**der Polizeibericht** police report  
*dair po-lee-tsie-be-rikht*

**der Dieb** thief  
*dair deep*

**die Polizei** police  
*dee po-lee-tsie*

**die Aussage** statement  
*dee ows-zah-ge*

**Rechtsanwalt/-wältin** lawyer  
*rekhts-un-vullt/-vael-tin*

**Zeuge/Zeugin** witness  
*tsoy-ge/tsoy-gin*

**Ich brauche einen Rechtsanwalt.**  
*ikh brow-khe ie-nen rekhts-un-vullt*  
I need a lawyer.



## 3 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Memorize these phrases and then test yourself.

**Ich bin bestohlen worden.** I've been robbed.  
*ikh bin be-shtoe-len vor-den*

**Was ist gestohlen worden?** What was stolen?  
*vuss isst ge-shtoe-len vor-den*

**Haben Sie den Täter gesehen?** Did you see who did it?  
*hah-ben zee den tay-ter ge-zay-en*

**Wann ist es passiert?** When did it happen?  
*vunn isst es puss-seert*



**die Wertsachen**  
*dee vairt-zakh-en*  
valuables

## 4 Words to remember: appearance (5 minutes)

Learn these words for describing people.



**Er hat eine Glatze und einen Bart.**  
*air hut ie-ne glut-se oont ie-nen bart*  
 He is bald and has a beard.

**Er hat kurze, schwarze Haare.**  
*air hut koor-tse, shvar-tse hah-re*  
 He has short, black hair.



man **der Mann**  
*dair munn*

woman **die Frau**  
*dee frow*

tall **groß**  
*groes*

short **klein**  
*kline*

young **jung**  
*yoong*

old **alt**  
*ullt*

fat **dick**  
*dick*

thin **dünn**  
*dewnn*

long/short hair **lange/kurze Haare**  
*lun-ge/koor-tse hah-re*

glasses **die Brille**  
*dee bril-le*

beard **der Bart**  
*dair bart*

**Cultural tip** If you have a car accident or serious breakdown on an expressway, use one of the special telephones that you can find at regular intervals. Elsewhere, call 112, which is free from all telephones in Germany. The operator will inform the appropriate service (police, fire service, or ambulance) immediately.

## 5 Put into practice (2 minutes)

Practice these phrases. Then cover up the text on the right and follow the instructions to make your reply in German.



**Wie sah er aus?** **Klein und dick.**  
*vee zah air ows kline oont dick*

What did he look like?

Say: Short and fat.



**Und die Haare?** **Lang, mit Bart.**  
*oont dee hah-re lung, mit bart*

And the hair?

Say: Long, with a beard.

## Antworten

Answers (Cover with flap)

### 1 To come

- 1 komme  
kom-me
- 2 kommt  
komt
- 3 kommen  
kom-men
- 4 kommt  
komt
- 5 kommen  
kom-men

# WIEDERHOLUNG

## Review and repeat

### 1 To come (3 minutes)

Fill in the gaps with the correct form of **kommen** (to come).

- 1 Ich \_\_\_\_\_ um vier Uhr.
- 2 Der Gärtner \_\_\_\_\_ einmal in der Woche.
- 3 Wir \_\_\_\_\_ Dienstag zum Essen.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ ihr mit?
- 5 Meine Eltern \_\_\_\_\_ mit dem Zug.

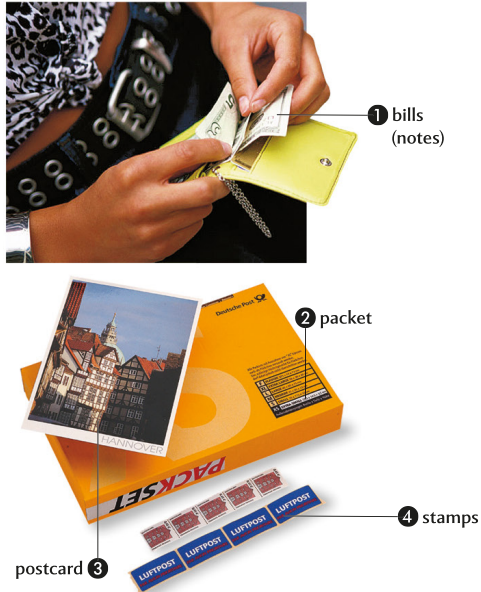


### 2 Bank and mail

- 1 die Banknoten  
dee bunk-noe-ten
- 2 das Paket  
duss pa-kayt
- 3 die Postkarte  
dee poss-tar-te
- 4 die Briefmarken  
dee breef-mar-ken

### 2 Bank and mail (4 minutes)

Name the numbered items in German.



**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**3 Appearance** (4 minutes)

What do these descriptions mean?

- 1 Der Mann ist groß und dünn.
- 2 Sie hat kurze Haare und eine Brille.
- 3 Ich bin klein und habe lange Haare.
- 4 Sie ist alt und dick.
- 5 Er hat blaue Augen und einen Bart.

**3 Appearance**

- 1 The man is tall and thin.
- 2 She has short hair and glasses.
- 3 I'm short and I have long hair.
- 4 She is old and fat.
- 5 He has blue eyes and a beard.

**4 The pharmacy** (4 minutes)

You are asking a pharmacist for advice. Join in the conversation, replying in German where you see the numbered English prompts.

**Guten Tag, kann ich Ihnen helfen?**

- 1 I have a cough.  
**Und haben Sie auch Schnupfen?**
- 2 No, but I have a headache.  
**Nehmen Sie diese Tabletten.**
- 3 Do you have that as a syrup?  
**Selbstverständlich. Bitte sehr.**
- 4 Thank you. How much is that?  
**Sechs Euro.**
- 5 Here you are. Goodbye.

**4 The pharmacy**

- 1 **Ich habe Husten.**  
*ikh hah-be  
hoos-ten*
- 2 **Nein, aber ich habe Kopfschmerzen.**  
*nine, ah-ber ikh hah-be  
kopf-shmairt-sen*
- 3 **Haben Sie das auch als Sirup?**  
*hah-ben zee  
duss owkh ulls  
zee-roop*
- 4 **Danke. Was macht das?**  
*dun-ke. vuss  
mukht duss*
- 5 **Bitte sehr. Auf Wiedersehen.**  
*bit-te zair. owf  
vee-der-zay-en*

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

What is the German for “museum” and “art gallery”? (pp.48-9)

Say “I don’t like the curtains.” (pp.100-1)

Ask “Do you want...?” informally (pp.22-3)

# DIE FREIZEIT

## Leisure time

In Germany the arts, from opera and classic drama to performance art and cabaret, and from great composers to folk and avant-garde music, are avidly followed and receive public support. **Lust haben** is a useful expression, meaning to *like the idea of doing something*.

## 2 Words to remember (4 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words.

**das Theater** theater  
*duss tay-ah-ter*

**das Kino** movie theater  
*duss kee-no*

**das Ballett** ballet  
*duss bull-let*

**die Musik** music  
*dee moo-zeek*

**die Kunst** art  
*dee koonst*

**der Sport** sports  
*dair shport*

**die Besichtigungen** sightseeing  
*dee be-zikh-tee-goong-en*

**die Computerspiele** computer games  
*dee com-pyoo-ter-shpee-le*

**Ich liebe Opern.**  
*ikh lee-be oh-pairn*  
I love opera.

**das Publikum**  
*duss poo-blee-koomm*  
audience



## 3 In conversation (4 minutes)



**Hast du Lust, heute Tennis zu spielen?**  
*husst doo loost, hoy-te ten-nis tsoo shpee-len*

Do you want to play tennis today?



**Nein, ich mag keinen Sport.**  
*nine, ikh mahk kie-nen shport*

No, I don’t like sports.



**Wofür interessierst du dich denn?**  
*voe-fewr in-ter-es-seerst doo dikh den*

So what are you interested in?



## 4 Useful phrases (4 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

I like the theater. **Ich liebe das Theater.**  
*ikh lee-be duss tay-ah-ter*

I prefer the movies. **Ich ziehe das Kino vor.**  
*ikh tsee-e duss kee-no for*

I'm interested in art. **Ich interessiere mich für die Kunst.**  
*ikh in-ter-es-see-re mikh fewr dee koonst*

What are your (formal/informal) interests? **Wofür interessierst du dich/interessieren Sie sich?**  
*vo-fewr in-ter-es-seerst doo dikh/in-ter-es-see-ren zee zikh*

That bores me. **Das finde ich langweilig.**  
*duss fin-de ikh lung-vie-likh*



**Ich hasse Gitarrenmusik.**  
*ikh hus-se gee-tar-ren-moo-zeek*  
I hate guitar music.

**der Rang**  
*dair rung*  
balcony



**das Parkett**  
*duss par-ket*  
orchestra level



## 5 Say it (2 minutes)

I'm interested in music.

I prefer sports.

I don't like computer games.



**Ich mache lieber Besichtigungen.**  
*ikh ma-khe lee-ber be-zikh-tee-goong-en*

I prefer sightseeing.



**Das interessiert mich nicht.**  
*duss in-ter-es-seert mikh nikht*

That doesn't interest me.



**Kein Problem. Ich gehe allein.**  
*kine pro-blaim. ikh gay-he ull-line*

No problem. I'll go on my own.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Ask "Do you (informal) want to play tennis?" (pp.118-19)

Say "I like the movies," "I prefer sightseeing," and "That doesn't interest me." (pp.118-19)

# SPORT UND HOBBYS

## Sports and hobbies

Germany is a nation of sports enthusiasts. Many people cycle, jog, swim, or work out at the gym, and many follow sports as spectators. Soccer is very popular, but so are boxing, hockey, tennis, and skiing. The verb **Spiele** (to play) is mainly used for ball games.

## 2 Words to remember: sports (5 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

**der Fußball** soccer  
*dair foos-bull*

**das Boxen** boxing  
*duss box-en*

**das Tennis** tennis  
*duss ten-nis*

**das Schwimmen** swimming  
*duss shvim-men*

**das Segeln** sailing  
*duss zay-geln*

**das Angeln** fishing  
*duss ung-eln*

**das Radfahren** cycling  
*duss raht-fah-ren*

**das Wandern** hiking  
*duss vunn-dairn*

**der Bunker**  
*dair boon-ker*  
bunker

**der Golfspieler**  
*dair golf-shpee-ler*  
golfer

**Ich spiele jeden Tag Golf.**  
*ikh shpee-le yay-den tahk golf*  
I play golf every day.

## 3 Useful phrases (2 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these phrases.

**Ich spiele Fußball.** I play soccer.  
*ikh shpee-le foos-bull*

**Wir spielen gern Tennis.** We like playing tennis.  
*veer shpee-len gairn ten-nis.*

**Sie malt.** She paints.  
*zee mahlt.*



## 4 Words to remember: hobbies (4 minutes)



Ich begeistere mich für das Fotografieren.

*ikh be-gesi-tair mikh fewr foe-to-grah-fee-ayren*  
I'm into photography.

die Flagge  
*dee flug-ge*  
flag

der Golfplatz  
*dair golf-pluts*  
golf course

Learn these words and phrases, then test yourself using the cover flap.

do-it-yourself **das Basteln**  
*duss bass-teln*

pottery **die Töpferei**  
*dee ter-pfe-rie*

flower arranging **das Blumenstecken**  
*duss bloo-men-shtek-en*

gardening **die Gartenarbeit**  
*dee gar-ten-ar-biet*

singing **das Singen**  
*duss zing-en*

Can I join a club? **Kann ich einem Klub beitreten?**  
*kunn ikh ien-em kloop bie-tray-ten*

Do I have to be a member? **Muss man Mitglied sein?**  
*moos munn mit-gleet zine*

Can I rent the equipment? **Kann ich die Ausrüstung mieten?**  
*kumm ikh dee ows-rews-toong mee-ten*

## 5 Put into practice (3 minutes)



Join in this conversation. Conceal the text on the right and complete the dialogue in German using the cover flap. Check your answers.

**Was machst du gern?** **Ich spiele gern Tennis.**  
*vuss mukhst doo gairn* *ikh shpee-le gairn ten-nis*

What do you like doing?

Say: I like playing tennis.



**Spielst du auch Golf?** **Nein, ich spiele Fußball.**  
*speelst doo owkh golf* *nine, ikh shpee-le foos-bull*

Do you also play golf?

Say: No, I play soccer.



**Spielst du oft?** **Ja, ich spiele jede Woche.**  
*speelst doo oft*

Do you play often? *yah, ikh shpee-le yay-de vokh-e*

Say: Yes, I play every week.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "my husband" and "my wife." (pp.10-11)

How do you say "lunch" and "dinner" in German? (pp.20-1)

Say "Sorry, I'm busy." (pp.32-3)

# BESUCHEN

## Socializing

In Germany, much socializing takes place outside the home. People meet to go to a play, a movie, or a sports event together, or they go out for a meal or a drink. Friends and family also invite each other for meals, especially for special occasions such as birthdays.

der Gast  
dair gust  
guest

## 2 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

Learn these phrases and then test yourself.

**Ich möchte Sie zum Abendessen einladen.**  
*ikh merk-te zee tsoom ah-bent-ess-sen ine-lah-den* I'd like to invite you for dinner.

**Sind Sie nächsten Mittwoch frei?**  
*zint zee nayks-ten mit-vokh frie* Are you free next Wednesday?

**Vielleicht ein andermal.**  
*feel-liekht ine un-der-mahl* Perhaps another time.



**Cultural tip** When you go to someone's house for the first time, flowers are a welcome gift. If you are invited again, being better acquainted, you can bring something a little more personal.

## 3 In conversation (3 minutes)



**Möchten Sie zum Mittagessen kommen?**  
*merkht-ten zee tsoom mit-tahk-ess-sen kom-men*

Would you like to come to lunch?



**Mit Vergnügen. Wann?**  
*mit fer-g-new-gen. vunn*  
I'd be delighted. When?



**Wie wär's mit Donnerstag?**  
*vee vairs mit don-ners-tahk*  
How about Thursday?

#### 4 Words to remember (3 minutes)

Familiarize yourself with these words and test yourself using the flap.

party	<b>die Party</b> <i>dee par-tee</i>
dinner party	<b>das Abendessen</b> <i>duss ah-bent-ess-sen</i>
invitation	<b>die Einladung</b> <i>dee ine-lah-doong</i>
reception	<b>der Empfang</b> <i>dair emp-fung</i>
cocktail party	<b>die Cocktailparty</b> <i>dee cock-tayl-par-tee</i>

die Gastgeberin  
*dee gust-gay-be-rin*  
hostess



Danke für die  
Einladung.  
*dun-ke fewr dee*  
*ine-lah-doonk.*  
Thank you for  
inviting us.

#### 5 Put into practice (5 minutes)

Join in this conversation.

**Können Sie heute Abend zu einem Empfang kommen?** **Ja, gerne.**  
*ker-nen zee hoy-te ah-bent tsoo* *yah, gair-ne*  
*ie-nem emp-fung kom-men*

Can you come to a reception tonight?

Say: Yes, I'd love to.

**Es fängt um zwanzig Uhr an.** **Was trägt man?**  
*es fengt oom tsvun-tsik oor un* *vuss traygt munn*

It starts at eight o'clock.

Ask: What should I wear?



**Das passt mir gut.**  
*duss pusst meer goot*  
That's good for me.



**Bringen Sie Ihren Mann mit.**  
*brin-gen zee ee-ren munn mit*  
Bring your husband.



**Danke. Um wieviel Uhr?**  
*dun-ke. oom vee-feel oor*  
Thank you. What time?

## Antworten

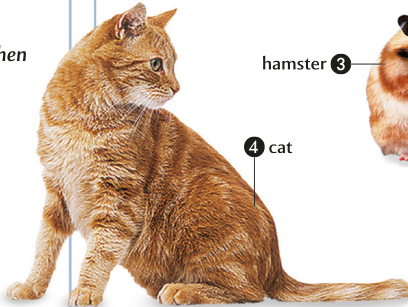
Answers (Cover with flap)

# WIEDERHOLUNG

## Review and repeat

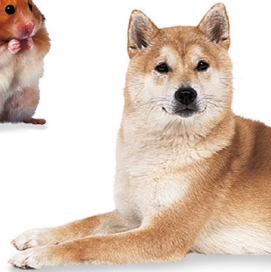
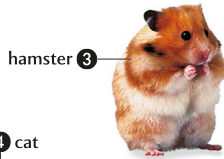
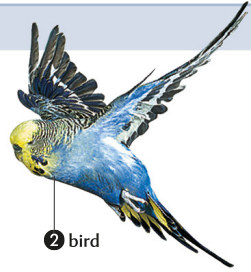
### 1 Animals

- 1 der Fisch  
dair fish
- 2 der Vogel  
dair foh-gel
- 3 der Hamster  
dair hums-ter
- 4 die Katze  
dee kut-se
- 5 das Kaninchen  
duss kah-neen-khen
- 6 der Hund  
dair hoont



### 1 Animals (3 minutes)

Name the animals.



### 2 I like...

- 1 Ich spiele gern Fußball.  
ikh shpee-le gairn foos-bull
- 2 Ich spiele nicht gern Golf.  
ikh shpee-le nikht gairn golf
- 3 Ich male gern.  
ikh mah-le gairn
- 4 Blumenstecken mache ich nicht gern.  
bloo-men-shtek-ken makh-e ikh nikht gairn

### 2 I like... (4 minutes)

Say the following in German.

- 1 I like playing soccer.
- 2 I don't like playing golf.
- 3 I like to paint.
- 4 I don't like flower arranging.



**Antworten**

Answers (Cover with flap)

**3 Leisure** (4 minutes)

What is the German for these sports and leisure activities?

- ① sailing
- ② art
- ③ sightseeing
- ④ movies
- ⑤ hiking
- ⑥ swimming



⑤ rabbit



⑥ dog

**3 Leisure**

- ① **das Segeln**  
*duss zay-geln*
- ② **die Kunst**  
*dee koonst*
- ③ **die Besichtigungen**  
*dee be-zikh-tee-goong-en*
- ④ **das Kino**  
*duss kee-no*
- ⑤ **das Wandern**  
*duss vunn-dairn*
- ⑥ **das Schwimmen**  
*duss shvim-men*

**4 An invitation** (4 minutes)

You are invited for dinner. Join in the conversation, replying in German following the English prompts.

**Möchten Sie am Freitag zum Essen kommen?**

- ① I'm sorry, I'm busy.

**Wie wär's mit Samstag?**

- ② I'd love to.

**Bringen Sie Ihre Kinder mit.**

- ③ Thank you. What time?

**Um halb eins.**

- ④ That's good for me.

**4 An invitation**

- ① **Es tut mir Leid, ich habe schon etwas vor.**  
*es toot meer liet, ikh hah-be shoen et-vuss for*
- ② **Mit Vergnügen.**  
*mit fer-g-new-gen*
- ③ **Danke. Um wieviel Uhr?**  
*dun-ke. oom vee-feel oor*
- ④ **Ja, das passt mir.**  
*yah, duss pusst meer*

# Reinforce and progress

Regular practice is the key to maintaining and advancing your language skills. In this section you will find a variety of suggestions for reinforcing and extending your knowledge of German. Many involve returning to exercises in the book and using the dictionaries to extend their scope. Go back through the lessons in a different order, mix and match activities to make up your own 15-minute daily program, or focus on topics that are of particular relevance to your current needs.

## 1 Warm up (1 minute)

Say "I'm sorry". (pp.32-3)

What is the German for "I'd like an appointment?" (pp.32-3)

Ask "with whom?" in German. (pp.32-3)

## Keep warmed up

Revisit the Warm Up boxes to remind yourself of key words and phrases. Make sure you work your way through all of them on a regular basis.

## 2 I'd like... (3 minutes)

Say you'd like the following:



## Review and repeat again

Work through a Review and Repeat lesson as a way of reinforcing words and phrases presented in the course. Return to the main lesson for any topic on which you are no longer confident.

## Carry on conversing

Reread the

In Conversation panels. Say both parts of the conversation, paying attention to the pronunciation. Where possible, try incorporating new words from the dictionary.

## 3 In conversation: taxi (2 minutes)



Zum Flughafen, bitte.  
tsoom flook-hah-fen,  
bit-te

The airport, please.



Jawohl, kein Problem.  
yah-voel. kine pro-blaym

Yes, no problem.



Können Sie mich bitte  
hier absetzen?  
ker-nen zee mikh bit-te  
heer up-zet-sen

Can you drop me  
here, please?

## 4 Useful phrases (3 minutes)

**Öffnungszeiten:**  
Di. - Fr. 11 - 18 Uhr  
Sa. + So. 11 - 16 Uhr  
(Montags geschlossen)



Learn these phrases and then test yourself using the cover flap.

What time do you  
open/close?

**Wann öffnen/  
schließen Sie?**  
vunn erf-nen/shlee-sen zee

Where are the toilets?

**Wo sind die Toiletten?**  
voe zind dee twah-let-ten

Is there wheelchair  
access?

**Gibt es Zugang für  
Rollstuhlfahrer?**  
geeft es tsoo-gung  
fewr roll-shtool-fah-rer

## Practice phrases

Return to the Useful Phrases and Put into Practice exercises. Test yourself using the cover flap. When you are confident, devise your own versions of the phrases, using new words from the dictionary.



**Match, repeat, and extend**

Remind yourself of words related to specific topics by returning to the Match and Repeat and Words to Remember exercises. Test yourself using the cover flap. Discover new words in that area by referring to the dictionary and menu guide.

**5 Match and repeat** (4 minutes)

Match the numbered items in this scene with the text in the panel.

- 1 der Rhabarber  
*dair ra-bar-ber*
- 2 die Kartoffeln  
*dee kar-toff-eln*
- 3 die Radieschen  
*dee ra-dees-khen*
- 4 der Spinat  
*dair shpee-naht*
- 5 die Möhren  
*dee mer-ren*
- 6 der Kohl  
*dair koel*
- 7 der Lauch  
*dair lowk*
- 8 der Kohlrabi  
*dair koel-rah-bee*

**6 Say it** (2 minutes)

The lawn needs watering.  
Are there any trees?  
The gardener comes  
on Fridays.

**Say it again**

The Say It exercises are a useful instant reminder for each lesson. Practice these, using your own vocabulary variations from the dictionary or elsewhere in the lesson.

**Using other resources**

In addition to working with this book, try the following language extension ideas:

**Visit a German-speaking country** and try out your new skills with native speakers. Find out if there is a German community near you. There may be shops, cafés, restaurants, and clubs. Try to visit some of these and use your German to order food and drink and strike up conversations. Most native speakers will be happy to speak German to you.

**Join a language class or club.** There are usually evening and day classes available at a variety of different levels. Or you could start a club yourself if you have friends who are also interested in keeping up their German.

**Look at German magazines and newspapers.** The pictures will help you to understand the text. Advertisements are also a useful way of expanding your vocabulary.

**Use the Internet,** where you can find all kinds of websites for learning languages, some of which offer free online help and activities. You can also find German websites for anything from renting a house to shampooing your pet. You can even access German radio and TV stations online. Start by going to a German search engine, such as *excite.de*, and keying a subject that interests you, or set yourself a challenge: for example, finding a two-bedroom apartment for rent in Hamburg.



# MENU GUIDE

This guide lists the most common terms you may encounter on German menus or when shopping for food. If you can't find an exact phrase, try looking up its component parts.

## A

**Aal** eel  
**am Spieß** on the spit  
**Ananas** pineapple  
**Äpfel** apple  
**Apfel im Schlafrock** baked apple in puff pastry  
**Apfelsaft** apple juice  
**Apfelsinen** oranges  
**Apfelstrudel** apple strudel  
**Apfeltasche** apple turnover  
**Apfelwein** cider  
**Aprikosen** apricots  
**Arme Ritter** bread soaked in milk and egg then fried  
**Artischocken** artichokes  
**Auberginen** eggplant  
**Auflauf** baked pudding or omelet  
**Aufschnitt** cold meats  
**Austern** oysters

## B

**Backobst** dried fruit  
**Backpflaume** prune  
**Baiser** meringue  
**Balkansalat** cabbage and pepper salad  
**Bananen** bananas  
**Bandnudeln** ribbon noodles  
**Basilikum** basil  
**Bauernauflauf** bacon and potato omelet  
**Bauernfrühstück** fried potato, bacon, and egg  
**Bauernomelett** bacon and potato omelet  
**Bechamelkartoffeln** potatoes in creamy sauce  
**Bedienung** service  
**Beilagen** side dishes  
**Berliner** jelly doughnut  
**Bier** beer  
**Birnen** pears  
**Biskuit** sponge cake  
**Bismarckhering** filleted pickled herring  
**Blätterteig** puff pastry  
**blau** cooked in vinegar; virtually raw (steak)

**Blumenkohl** cauliflower  
**blutig** rare  
**Blutwurst** black pudding  
**Bockwurst** large frankfurter  
**Bohnen** beans  
**Bouillon** clear soup  
**Braten** roast meat  
**Brathering** pickled and fried herring, served cold  
**Bratkartoffeln** fried potatoes  
**Bratwurst** grilled pork sausage  
**Brot** bread  
**Brötchen** roll  
**Brühwurst** large frankfurter  
**Brust** breast  
**Bückling** smoked red herring  
**Buletten** burgers; rissoles  
**Bunte Platte** mixed platter  
**Burgundersoße** Burgundy wine sauce  
**Buttercremetorte** cream cake  
**Buttermilch** buttermilk

## C, D

**Champignons** mushrooms  
**Cordon bleu** veal cordon bleu  
**Currywurst mit Pommes** frites curried pork sausage with fries  
**Dampfnudeln** sweet yeast dumpling  
**Deutsches Beefsteak** ground meat or patty  
**Dicke Bohnen** broad beans  
**Dillsoße** dill sauce  
**durchgebraten** well-done  
**durchwachsen** with fat  
**durchwachsener Speck** bacon

## E

**Eier** eggs  
**Eierauflauf** omelet  
**Eierkuchen** pancake  
**Eierpfannkuchen** egg pancake  
**Eierspeise** egg dish  
**eingelegt** pickled  
**Eintopf** stew  
**Eintopfergericht** stew  
**Eis** ice

**Eisbecher** sundae  
**Eisbein** knuckles of pork  
**Eisschokolade** iced chocolate  
**Eissplittertorte** ice chip cake  
**Endivien Salat** endive salad  
**englisch** rare  
**Entenbraten** roast duck  
**entgrätet** bones (fish)  
**Erbsen** peas  
**Erdbeertorte** strawberry cake  
**Essig** vinegar

## F

**Falscher Hase** meat loaf  
**Fasan** pheasant  
**Fenchel** fennel  
**Fett** fat  
**Filet** fillet (steak)  
**Fisch** fish  
**Fischfrikadellen** fishcakes  
**Fischstäbchen** fish sticks  
**Flädlesuppe** consommé with crepe strips  
**flambiert** flambéed  
**Fleischbrühe** bouillon  
**Fleischkäse** meat loaf  
**Fleischklößchen** meatball(s)  
**Fleischpastete** meat vol-au-vent  
**Fleischsalat** diced meat salad with mayonnaise  
**Fleischwurst** pork sausage  
**Fond** meat juices  
**Forelle** trout  
**Forelle Müllerin (Art)** breaded trout with butter and lemon  
**Frikadelle** rissole  
**Frikassee** fricassee  
**fritiert** (deep-) fried  
**Froschschenkel** frog's legs  
**Fruchtsaft** fruit juice  
**Frühlingsrolle** spring roll

## G

**Gans** goose  
**Gänseleberpastete** goose-liver pâté  
**garniert** garnished  
**Gebäck** pastries, cakes  
**gebacken** baked  
**gebraten** roast

gedünstet steamed  
 Geflügel poultry  
 Geflügelleberragout chicken  
   liver ragoût  
 gefüllt stuffed  
 gefüllte Kalbsbrust veal roll  
 gekocht boiled  
 Gelee gelatin  
 gemischter Salat  
   mixed salad  
 Gemüse vegetable(s)  
 Gemüseplatte  
   assorted vegetables  
 gepökelt salted, pickled  
 geräuchert smoked  
 Gericht dish  
 geschmort braised, stewed  
 Geschnetzeltes strips of fried  
   meat in cream sauce  
 gespickt larded  
 Getränke beverages  
 Gewürze spices  
 Gewürzgurken pickles  
 Goldbarsch type of perch  
 Götterspeise jelly  
 gratiniert au gratin  
 Grieß semolina  
 Grießklößchen  
   semolina dumplings  
 grüne Bohnen French beans  
 grüne Nudeln green pasta  
 grüner Aal fresh eel  
 Grünkohl (curly) kale  
 Gulasch goulash  
 Gulaschsuppe goulash soup  
 Gurkensalat cucumber salad

## H

Hackfleisch ground meat  
 Hähnchen chicken  
 Hähnchenkeule chicken leg  
 Haifischflossensuppe  
   shark-fin soup  
 Hammelbraten roast mutton  
 Hammelfleisch mutton  
 Hammelkeule leg of mutton  
 Hammelrücken  
   saddle of mutton  
 Hartkäse hard cheese  
 Haschee hash  
 Hasenkeule haunch of hare  
 Hasenpfeffer hare casserole  
 Hauptspeisen main courses  
 Hecht pike  
 Heidelbeeren bilberries,  
   blueberries  
 Heilbutt halibut  
 Heringsstipp herring salad  
 Heringstopf pickled herrings  
   in sauce  
 Herz heart  
 Herzragout heart ragoût  
 Himbeeren raspberries

Himmel und Erde potato and  
   apple purée with black pudding  
   or liver sausage  
 Hirn brains  
 Hirschbraten roast venison  
 Honig honey  
 Honigmelone honeydew melon  
 Hoppelpoppel bacon and  
   potato omelet  
 Hüfte haunch  
 Huhn chicken  
 Hühnerbrühe chicken broth  
 Hühnerfrikassee  
   chicken fricassee  
 Hülsenfrüchte peas and beans,  
   legumes  
 Hummer lobster

## J, K

Jägerschnitzel cutlet with  
   mushrooms  
 Kabeljau cod  
 Kaffee coffee  
 Kaiserschmarren sugared  
   pancake with raisins  
 Kakao cocoa  
 Kalbfleisch veal  
 Kalbsbries sweetbread  
 Kalbsfrikassee veal fricassee  
 Kalbshaxe leg of veal  
 Kalbsnierenbraten roast veal  
   with kidney  
 Kalbsschnitzel veal cutlet  
 kalte Platte cold platter  
 kaltes Büfett cold buffet  
 Kaltschale cold, sweet fruit soup  
 Kaninchen rabbit  
 Kapern capers  
 Karamelpudding  
   caramel pudding  
 Karotten carrots  
 Karpfen carp  
 Kartoffelbrei mashed potato  
 Kartoffeln potatoes  
 Kartoffelpuffer potato fritters  
 Kartoffelpüree mashed potato  
 Käse cheese  
 Käsegebäck cheese crackers  
 Käsekuchen cheesecake  
 Käseplatte selection of cheeses  
 Käse-Sahne-Torte  
   cream cheesecake  
 Käsespätzle homemade  
   noodles with cheese  
 Kasseler Rippenspeer  
   smoked pork loin  
 Kasserolle casserole  
 Kassler smoked pork loin  
 Kastanien chestnuts  
 Katenrauchwurst smoked  
   sausage  
 Keule leg, haunch  
 Kieler Sprotten smoked sprats

Kirschen cherries  
 klare Brühe consommé  
 Klöße dumplings  
 Knäckebrötchen crispbread  
 Knacker spicy fried sausage  
 Knackwurst spicy fried sausage  
 Knoblauch garlic  
 Knochen bone  
 Knochenschinken  
   ham on the bone  
 Knödel dumplings  
 Kognak brandy  
 Kohl cabbage  
 Kohlrouladen  
   stuffed cabbage leaves  
 Kohl und Pinkel cabbage,  
   potatoes, sausage, and  
   smoked meat  
 Kompott stewed fruit  
 Konfitüre jam  
 Königinpastete  
   chicken vol-au-vent  
 Königsberger Klopse  
   meatballs in caper sauce  
 Königskuchen type of fruit cake  
 Kopfsalat lettuce  
 Kotelett chop  
 Krabben Krabben shrimp  
 Krabbencocktail shrimp cocktail  
 Kraftbrühe beef consommé  
 Kräuter herbs  
 Krautsalat coleslaw  
 Krautwickel  
   stuffed cabbage leaves  
 Krebs crayfish  
 Kresse cress  
 Kroketten croquettes  
 Kruste crust  
 Kuchen cake  
 Kürbis pumpkin

## L

Labskaus meat, fish, and  
   potato stew  
 Lachs salmon  
 Lachsersatz sliced, salted pollack  
   (fish)  
 Lachsforelle sea trout  
 Lachsschinken smoked rolled  
   fillet of ham  
 Lamm lamb  
 Lammrücken saddle of lamb  
 Langusten crayfish  
 Lauch leek  
 Leber liver  
 Leberkäse baked pork and  
   beef loaf  
 Leberpastete liver pâté  
 Leberwurst liver pâté  
 Lebkuchen gingerbread  
 Leipziger Allerlei  
   mixed vegetables  
 Linsen lentils

**M**

**mager lean**  
**Majoran marjoram**  
**Makrele mackerel**  
**Makronen macaroons**  
**Mandeln almonds**  
**mariniert marinated, pickled**  
**Markklößchen**  
*marrow dumplings*  
**Marmelade jam**  
**Maronen sweet chestnuts**  
**Matjes(hering) young herring**  
**Medaillons small fillets**  
**Meeresfische seafish**  
**Meeresfrüchte seafood**  
**Meerrettich horseradish**  
**Miesmuscheln mussels**  
**Milch milk**  
**Milchmixgetränk milk shake**  
**Milchreis rice pudding**  
**Mineralwasser (sparkling)**  
*mineral water*  
**Mohnkuchen poppyseed cake**  
**Möhren carrots**  
**Mohrrüben carrots**  
**Most fruit wine**  
**Mus purée**  
**Muscheln mussels**  
**Muskat(nuss) nutmeg**  
**MWSt (Mehrwertsteuer) VAT**

**N, O**

**nach Art des Hauses**  
*of the house*  
**nach Hausfrauenart**  
*homemade*  
**Nachspeisen desserts**  
**Nachtisch dessert**  
**Napfkuchen ring-shaped**  
*poundcake*  
**natürlich natural**  
**Nieren kidneys**  
**Nudeln pasta, noodles**  
**Nüsse nuts**  
**Obstsalat fruit salad**  
**Ochsenschwanzsuppe**  
*oxtail soup*  
**Öl oil**  
**Oliven olives**  
**Orangen oranges**  
**Orangensaft orange juice**

**P**

**Palatschinken stuffed pancakes**  
**paniert with breadcrumbs**  
**Paprika peppers**  
**Paprikaschoten peppers**  
**Paradiesäpfel tomatoes**  
**Pastete vol-au-vent**  
**Pellkartoffeln potatoes boiled in their skins**

**Petersilie parsley**  
**Pannkuchen**  
*pancake(s)*  
**Pfeffer pepper**  
**Pfifferlinge chanterelles**  
**Pfirsiche peaches**  
**Pflaumen plums**  
**Pflaumenkuchen plum tart**  
**Pflaumenmus plum jam**  
**Pichelsteiner Topf vegetable**  
*stew with beef*  
**pikant spicy**  
**Pilze mushrooms**  
**Platte selection**  
**pochiert poached**  
**Pökelfleisch salt meat**  
**Pommes frites**  
*French fried potatoes*  
**Porree leek**  
**Potthast braised beef with sauce**  
**Poularde young chicken**  
**Preiselbeeren cranberries**  
**Presskopf brown**  
**Pumpernickel black rye bread**  
**Püree mashed potato**  
**püriert puréed**  
**Putenschenkel turkey leg**  
**Puter turkey**

**Q, R**

**Quark curd cheese**  
**Radieschen radishes**  
**Rahm (sour) cream**  
**Räucheraal smoked eel**  
**Räucherhering kipper,**  
*smoked herring*  
**Räucherlachs smoked salmon**  
**Räucherspeck smoked bacon**  
**Rauchfleisch smoked meat**  
**Rehbraten roast venison**  
**Rehulasch venison goulash**  
**Rehkeule haunch of venison**  
**Rehrücken saddle of venison**  
**Reibekuchen potato waffles**  
**Reis rice**  
**Reisbrei creamed rice**  
**Reisrand with rice**  
**Remoulade mayonnaise**  
*flavored with herbs,*  
*mustard, and capers*  
**Renke whitefish**  
**Rettich radish**  
**Rhabarber rhubarb**  
**Rheinischer Sauerbraten**  
*roast pickled beef*  
**Rinderbraten pot roast**  
**Rinderfilet fillet steak**  
**Rinderrouladen beef olives**  
**Rinderzunge ox tongue**  
**Rindfleisch beef**  
**Rippchen spareribs**  
**Risi-Pisi rice and peas**  
**roh raw**

**Rohkostplatte selection**  
*of salads*  
**Rollmops rolled-up pickled**  
*herring, rollmops*  
**rosa rare to medium**  
**Rosenkohl Brussels sprouts**  
**Rosinen raisins**  
**Rostbraten roast**  
**Rostbratwurst**  
*barbecued sausage*  
**Rösti fried potatoes**  
*and onions*  
**Röstkartoffeln fried potatoes**  
**Rotbarsch type of perch**  
**Rote Bete beet**  
**rote Grütze red fruit jelly**  
**Rotkohl red cabbage**  
**Rotkraut red cabbage**  
**Rotwein red wine**  
**Rührei scrambled eggs**  
**Russische Eier hard-boiled**  
*egg and mayonnaise*

**S**

**Sahne cream**  
**Salate salads**  
**Salatplatte selection of salads**  
**Salatsoße salad dressing**  
**Salz salt**  
**Salzburger Nockerln**  
*sweet soufflés*  
**Salzheringe salted herrings**  
**Salzkartoffeln boiled potatoes**  
**Salzkruste salty crusted skin**  
**Sandkuchen type of**  
*Madeira cake*  
**sauer sour**  
**Sauerbraten roast pickled beef**  
**Sauerkraut pickled white**  
*cabbage*  
**Sauerrahm sour cream**  
**Schaschlik (shish-)kebab**  
**Schattenmorellen**  
*morello cherries*  
**Schellfisch haddock**  
**Schildkrötensuppe real**  
*turtle soup*  
**Schillerlocken smoked**  
*haddock rolls*  
**Schinken ham**  
**Schinkenröllchen rolled ham**  
**Schlachtplatte selection of**  
*fresh sausages*  
**Schlagsahne whipped cream**  
**Schlei tench**  
**Schmorbraten pot roast**  
**Schnecken snails**  
**Schnittlauch chives**  
**Schnitzel breaded escalope**  
**Schokolade chocolate**  
**Scholle plaice**  
**Schulterstück slice of shoulder**  
**Schwarzbrötchen brown rye bread**

**Schwarzwälder Kirschtorte**  
Black Forest cake

**Schwarzwurzeln** salsify

**Schwein** pork

**Schweinebauch** belly of pork

**Schweinefleisch** pork

**Schweinerippe** cured pork chop

**Schweinerollbraten** rolled  
roast of pork

**Schweineschmorbraten**  
roast pork

**Schweineschnitzel** breaded  
pork cutlet

**Schweinschaxe** knuckle of pork

**Seelachs** pollack (fish)

**Seezunge** sole

**Sekt** sparkling wine

**Sellerie** celeriac

**Semmel** bread roll

**Senf** mustard

**Senfsahnesoße** mustard and  
cream sauce

**Senfsoße** mustard sauce

**Serbisches Reisfleisch** diced  
pork, onions, tomatoes, and rice

**Soleier** pickled eggs

**Soße** sauce, gravy

**Soufflé** soufflé

**Spanferkel** suckling pig

**Spargel** asparagus

**Spätzle** homemade noodles

**Speck** fatty bacon

**Speisekarte** menu

**Spezialität des Hauses**  
house specialty

**Spiegeleier** fried eggs

**Spießbraten** joint roasted  
on a spit

**Spinat** spinach

**Spitzkohl** white cabbage

**Sprossen** sprats

**Sprudel(wasser)** mineral water

**Stachelbeeren** gooseberries

**Stangen(weiß)brot** French bread

**Steinbutt** turbot

**Steinpilze** cep mushrooms

**Stollen** stollen (Christmas fruit  
bread)

**Strammer Max** ham and fried  
egg on bread

**Streuselkuchen** cake with  
crumble topping

**Sülze** brawn

**Suppen** soups

**Suppengrün**  
mixed herbs and vegetables  
(used in soup)

**süß** sweet

**süß-sauer** sweet-and-sour

**Süßspeisen** sweet dishes

**Süßwasserfische** freshwater  
fish

**Szegediner Gulasch** goulash  
with pickled cabbage

**T**  
.....

**Tafelwasser** (still)  
mineral water

**Tafelwein** table wine

**Tagesgericht** dish of the day

**Tageskarte** menu of the day

**Tagesuppe** soup of the day

**Tatar** steak tartare

**Taube** pigeon

**Tee** tea

**Teigmantel** pastry case

**Thunfisch** tuna

**Tintenfisch** squid

**Tomaten** tomatoes

**Törtchen** tart(s)

**Torte** cake

**Truthahn** turkey

**U, V**  
.....

**überbacken** au gratin

**Ungarischer Gulasch**  
Hungarian goulash

**ungebraten** not fried

**Vanille** vanilla

**Vanillesoße** vanilla sauce

**verlorene Eier** poached eggs

**Vollkornbrot** dark whole grain  
bread

**vom Grill** grilled

**vom Kalb** veal

**vom Rind** beef

**vom Rost** grilled

**vom Schwein** pork

**Vorspeisen** hors d'oeuvres,  
appetizers

**W**  
.....

**Waffeln** waffles

**Waldorfsalat** Waldorf salad  
(salad with celery, apples, and  
walnuts)

**Wasser** water

**Wassermelone** watermelon

**Weichkäse** soft cheese

**Weinbergschnecken** snails

**Weinbrand** brandy

**Weincreme** pudding with wine

**Weinschaumcreme** creamed  
pudding with wine

**Weinsoße** wine sauce

**Weintrauben** grapes

**Weißbier** wheat beer

**Weißbrot** white bread

**Weißkohl** white cabbage

**Weißkraut** white cabbage

**Weißwein** white wine

**Weißwurst** veal sausage

**Weizenbier** fizzy, light-colored  
beer made with wheat

**Wiener Schnitzel** veal in  
breadcrumbs

**Wild game**

**Wildschweinkeule** haunch of  
wild boar

**Wildschweinsteak**  
wild boar steak

**Windbeutel** cream puff

**Wirsing** savoy cabbage

**Wurst** sausage

**Würstchen** frankfurter(s)

**Wurstplatte** selection of  
sausages

**Wurstsalat** sausage salad

**Wurstsülze** sausage brawn

**würzig** spicy

**Z**  
.....

**Zander** pike-perch, zander

**Zigeunerschnitzel** veal with  
peppers and relishes

**Zitrone** lemon

**Zitronencreme** lemon cream

**Zucchini** zucchini

**Zucker** sugar

**Zuckererbsen** snow peas

**Zunge** tongue

**Zungenragout** tongue ragoût

**Zutaten** ingredients

**Zwiebeln** onions

**Zwiebelringe** onion rings

**Zwiebelsuppe** onion soup

**Zwiebeltorte** onion tart

**Zwischengerichte** entrées

# DICTIONARY

## English to German

In German, the gender of a noun is indicated by the word for *the*: **der** for a masculine noun, **die** for feminine, and **das** for neuter. **Die** is also used with plural nouns, and the abbreviations *m pl*, *f pl*, and *nt pl* are used to indicate their gender here. The feminine form of most occupations and personal attributes is made by adding **-in** to the masculine form: *accountant* **Buchhalter(in)**, for example. Exceptions to this rule are listed separately. Where necessary, adjectives are denoted by the abbreviation *adj*.

- A** .....
- about*: *about* 16 *etwa* 16  
*accelerator* **das Gaspedal**  
*accident* **der Unfall**  
*accommodation* **die Unterkunft**  
*accountant* **der/die Buchhalter(in)**  
*ache* **der Schmerz**  
*across from*: *across from the hotel gegenüber dem Hotel*  
*adapter* **der Adapter**  
*address* **die Adresse**  
*admission charge* **der Eintrittspreis**  
*after* **nach**  
*aftershave* **das Rasierwasser**  
*again* **nochmal**  
*against* **gegen**  
*agenda* **die Tagesordnung**  
*agent* **der Vertreter**  
*air* **die Luft**  
*air conditioning* **die Klimaanlage**  
*aircraft* **das Flugzeug**  
*airline* **die Fluglinie**  
*airmail* **die Luftpost**  
*air mattress* **die Luftmatratze**  
*airport* **der Flughafen**  
*airport bus* **der Flughafenbus**  
*aisle* **der Gang**  
*alarm clock* **der Wecker**  
*alcohol* **der Alkohol**  
*all* **alle(s); all the streets alle Straßen; that's all das ist alles**  
*allergic* **allergisch**  
*almost* **fast**  
*alone* **allein**  
*already* **schon**  
*always* **immer**  
*am*: *I am* **ich bin**  
*ambulance* **der Krankenwagen**  
*America* **Amerika**  
*American* **der/die Amerikaner(in); (adj) amerikanisch**
- and* **und**  
*ankle* **der Knöchel**  
*another (different)* **ein anderer; (one more) noch ein; another time ein andermal; another room ein anderes Zimmer; another coffee, please noch einen Kaffee, bitte**  
*answering machine* **der Anrufbeantworter**  
*antique shop* **das Antiquitätengeschäft**  
*antiseptic* **das Antiseptikum**  
*apartment* **die Wohnung**  
*aperitif* **der Aperitif**  
*appetite* **der Appetit**  
*appetizer* **die Vorspeisen (f pl)**  
*apple* **der Apfel**  
*application form* **das Antragsformular**  
*appointment* **der Termin**  
*apricot* **die Aprikose**  
*are: you are (singular informal)* **du bist; (singular formal; plural formal) Sie sind; (plural informal) ihr seid; we are wir sind; they are sie sind**  
*arm* **der Arm**  
*armchair* **der Sessel**  
*arrivals* **die Ankunft**  
*art* **die Kunst**  
*art gallery* **die Kunstgalerie**  
*artist* **der/die Künstler(in)**  
*as: as soon as possible so bald wie möglich*  
*ashtray* **der Aschenbecher**  
*asthma* **das Asthma**  
*at: at the post office auf der Post; at the station am Bahnhof; at night in der Nacht; at 3 o'clock um 3 Uhr*  
*athletic shoes* **die Turnschuhe**  
*ATM* **der Geldautomat**  
*attic* **der Dachboden**  
*attractive* **attraktiv**
- August* **August**  
*aunt* **die Tante**  
*Australia* **Australien**  
*Australian* **der/die Australier(in); (adj) australisch**  
*Austria* **Österreich**  
*Austrian* **der/die Österreicher(in); (adj) österreichisch**  
*automatic* **automatisch**  
*away: is it far away? ist es weit von hier?; go away! gehen Sie weg!  
*awful* **furchtbar***
- B** .....
- baby* **das Baby**  
*back (not front)* **die Rückseite; (part of body) der Rücken**  
*backpack* **der Rucksack**  
*bacon* **der Speck; bacon and eggs Eier mit Speck**  
*bad* **schlecht**  
*bag* **die Tasche**  
*baggage* **das Gepäck; baggage claim die Gepäckaussgabe**  
*bait* **der Köder**  
*bake* **backen**  
*baker* **der Bäcker**  
*bakery* **die Konditorei**  
*balcony* **der Balkon**  
*ball* **der Ball**  
*ballet* **das Ballett**  
*Baltic* **die Ostsee**  
*banana* **die Banane**  
*band (musicians)* **die Band**  
*bandage* **der Verband; (adhesive) das Pflaster**  
*bank* **die Bank**  
*banknote* **der (Geld)schein**  
*bar (drinks)* **die Bar**  
*barbecue* **der Grill**  
*barber's* **der Herrenfriseur**  
*bargain* **das Sonderangebot**  
*basement* **das Untergeschoss**

basin (sink) **das Becken**  
 basket **der Korb**  
 bath **das Bad**; (tub) **die Badewanne**; *to have a bath* **ein Bad nehmen**  
 bathroom **das Badezimmer**  
 bathroom sink **das Waschbecken**  
 bathtub **die Badewanne**  
 battery **die Batterie**  
 Bavaria **Bayern**  
 beach **der Strand**  
 beans **die Bohnen**  
 beard **der Bart**  
 beautiful **schön**  
 because **weil**  
 bed **das Bett**; *bed linen* **die Bettwäsche**  
 bedroom **das Schlafzimmer**  
 bedspread **die Tagesdecke**  
 beef **das Rindfleisch**  
 beer **das Bier**  
 before ... **vor ...**  
 beginner **der Anfänger**  
 behind ... **hinter ...**  
 beige **beige**  
 Belgian **der/die Belgier(in)**; (adj) **belgisch**  
 Belgium **Belgien**  
 bell (church) **die Glocke**; (door) **die Klingel**  
 below ... **unter ...**  
 belt **der Gürtel**  
 beside **neben**  
 best **bester**  
 better **besser**  
 between ... **zwischen ...**  
 bicycle **das Fahrrad**  
 big **groß**  
 bikini **der Bikini**  
 bill **die Rechnung**  
 biochemistry **die Biochemie**  
 bird **der Vogel**  
 birthday **der Geburtstag**; *happy birthday!* **Herzlichen Glückwunsch!**  
 birthday card **die Geburtstagskarte**  
 birthday present **das Geburtstagsgeschenk**  
 bite (by dog) **der Biss**; (by insect) **der Stich**; (verb: by dog) **beißen**; (by insect) **stechen**  
 bitter **bitter**  
 black **schwarz**  
 blackberry **die Brombeere**  
 black currant **die schwarze Johannisbeere**  
 Black Forest **der Schwarzwald**

blanket **die Decke**  
 bleach **das Bleichmittel**; (verb: hair) **bleichen**  
 blind (unsighted) **blind**  
 blinds **die Jalousie**  
 blister **die Blase**  
 blond (adj) **blond**  
 blood **das Blut**; *blood test* **die Blutprobe**  
 blouse **die Bluse**  
 blue **blau**  
 boarding pass **die Bordkarte**  
 boat **das Schiff**; (small) **das Boot**  
 body **der Körper**; (corpse) **die Leiche**  
 boil (verb) **kochen**  
 boiled **gekocht**  
 boiler **der Boiler**  
 bolt (on door) **der Riegel**; (verb) **verriegeln**  
 bone **der Knochen**  
 book **das Buch**; (verb) **buchen**  
 bookstore **die Buchhandlung**  
 boot **der Stiefel**  
 border **die Grenze**  
 boring **langweilig**  
 born: *I was born in ...* **ich bin in ... geboren**  
 both **beide**; *both of us* **wir beide**; *both ... and ...* **sowohl ... als auch ...**  
 bottle **die Flasche**  
 bottle opener **der Flaschenöffner**  
 bottom **der Boden**; (sea) **der Grund**  
 bowl **die Schüssel**  
 box **die Schachtel**  
 boxing **das Boxen**  
 box office **die Kasse**  
 boy **der Junge**  
 boyfriend **der Freund**  
 bra **der Büstenhalter**  
 bracelet **das Armband**  
 brake **die Bremse**; (verb) **bremsen**  
 branch **die Zweigstelle**  
 brandy **der Weinbrand**  
 bread **das Brot**  
 bread shop **die Bäckerei**  
 breakdown (car) **die Panne**  
 breakfast **das Frühstück**  
 breathe **atmen**  
 bridge **die Brücke**; (game) **das Bridge**  
 briefcase **die Aktentasche**  
 Britain **Großbritannien**  
 British **britisch**  
 brochure **die Broschüre**

broken (arm, etc.) **gebrochen**; (vase, etc.) **zerbrochen**; (machine, etc.) **kaputt**; *broken leg* **der Beinbruch**  
 brooch **die Brosche**  
 brother **der Bruder**  
 brother-in-law **der Schwager**  
 brown **braun**  
 bruise **der blaue Fleck**  
 brush **die Bürste**; (paint) **der Pinsel**; (verb: hair) **bürsten**; (floor) **kehren**  
 Brussels **Brüssel**  
 bucket **der Eimer**  
 budget **das Budget**  
 builder **der/die Bauarbeiter(in)**  
 building **das Gebäude**  
 bumper **die Stoßstange**  
 burglar **der Einbrecher**  
 burn **die Verbrennung**; (verb) **brennen**  
 bus **der Bus**; (*long distance*) **der Überlandbus**, **der Reisebus**  
 bus station **der Busbahnhof**  
 business **das Geschäft**; *it's none of your business* **das geht Sie nichts an**  
 business card **die Visitenkarte**  
 busy (occupied) **beschäftigt**; (bar, etc.) **voll**  
 but **aber**  
 butcher's **die Metzgerei**  
 butter **die Butter**  
 buy **kaufen**  
 by: *by the window* **am Fenster**; *by Friday* **bis Freitag**

## C

.....  
 cabbage **der Kohl**  
 cable car **die Drahtseilbahn**  
 café **das Café**  
 cage **der Käfig**  
 cake **der Kuchen**  
 calculator **der Rechner**  
 call: *what's it called?* **wie heißt das?**  
 camera **die Kamera**  
 camper **der Wohnwagen**  
 camper van **das Wohnmobil**  
 campfire **das Lagerfeuer**  
 camping gas **das Campinggas**  
 campground **der Campingplatz**; *campground office* **die Campingplatzverwaltung**  
 camshaft **die Nockenwelle**  
 can (vessel) **die Dose**; (verb: to be able) *can I have ...?* **kann ich ... haben?;** *can you ...?* **können Sie ...?**  
 Canada **Kanada**

- Canadian **der/die Kanadier(in)**;  
(adj) **kanadisch**
- canal **der Kanal**
- candle **die Kerze**
- canoe **das Kanu**
- can opener **der Dosenöffner**
- cap (bottle) **der Verschluss**;  
(hat) **die Mütze**
- car **das Auto**
- carburetor **der Vergaser**
- card **die Karte**
- careful **sorgfältig**; *be careful!*  
**passen Sie auf!**
- caretaker **der/die Hausmeister(in)**
- carpenter **der/die Schreiner(in)**
- carpet **der Teppich**
- car (train) **der Wagen**
- car repairs **die Werkstatt**
- carrot **die Möhre, die Karotte**
- carry-on luggage **das Handgepäck**
- case (suitcase) **der Koffer**
- carry-out (food) **der Schnellimbiss**
- car seat (for baby) **der Kindersitz**
- cart **der Kofferkuli**
- cash **das Bargeld**; (verb)  
**einlösen**; *to pay cash* **bar bezahlen**
- cashier **der/die Kassierer(in)**
- cassette **die Kassette**; *cassette player* **der Kassettenrecorder**
- castle **das Schloss, die Burg**
- cat **die Katze**
- cathedral **der Dom**
- cauliflower **der Blumenkohl**
- cave **die Höhle**
- CD **die Compact-Disc, die CD**
- ceiling **die Decke**
- cellar **der Keller**
- cell phone **das Handy, das Mobiltelefon**
- cemetery **der Friedhof**
- central heating **die Zentralheizung**
- center (middle) **die Mitte**
- certificate **die Bescheinigung**
- chair **der Stuhl**
- change (money) **das Kleingeld**;  
(verb: money) **wechseln**;  
(clothes) **sich umziehen**
- Channel **der Kanal**; *Channel Tunnel* **der Kanaltunnel**
- charger **das Ladegerät**
- cheap **billig**
- check **der Scheck**;  
*debit card* **die Scheckkarte**;  
*checkbook* **das Scheckheft**
- check in (desk) **der Abfertigungsschalter, die Abfertigung**; (verb)  
**einchecken**
- checkout **die Kasse**
- cheers! **prost!**
- cheese **der Käse**
- cherry **die Kirsche**
- chess **Schach**
- chest (part of body) **die Brust**;  
(furniture) **die Truhe**
- chest of drawers **die Kommode**
- chewing gum **der Kaugummi**
- chicken **das Huhn**;  
(cooked) **das Hähnchen**
- child **das Kind**
- children **die Kinder** (nt pl)
- children's ward **die Kinderstation**
- chimney **der Schornstein**
- china **das Porzellan**
- chips **die Chips**
- chocolate **die Schokolade**;  
*box of chocolates* **die Schachtel Pralinen**
- chop (food) **das Kotelett**;  
(verb: to cut) **kleinschneiden**
- Christmas **Weihnachten**
- church **die Kirche**
- cigar **die Zigarre**; (thin)  
**das Zigarillo**
- cigarette **die Zigarette**
- circle **der Rang**
- city **die (Groß)stadt**
- class **die Klasse**
- classical music **die klassische Musik**
- clean (adj) **sauber**
- cleaner **die Putzfrau**
- clear **klar**
- clever **klug**
- client **der Kunde**
- clock **die Uhr**
- close (near) **nah**; (stuffy) **stickig**;  
(verb) **schließen**
- closed **geschlossen**
- clothes **die Kleider** (nt pl)
- club **der Klub**
- clubs (cards) **Kreuz**
- clutch **die Kupplung**
- coat **der Mantel**
- coat hanger **der (Kleider)bügel**
- coffee **der Kaffee**; *black coffee* **der Kaffee ohne Milch**
- coin **die Münze**
- cold (illness) **die Erkältung**;  
(adj) **kalt**; *I have a cold* **ich bin erkältet**; *I am cold* **mir ist kalt**
- collar **das Halsband, der Kragen**
- collection (stamps, etc.) **die Sammlung**;
- Cologne **Köln**
- color **die Farbe**; *color film* **der Farbfilm**
- comb **der Kamm**
- come **kommen**; *I come from ...*  
**ich komme aus ...**;  
*come here!* **kommen Sie her!**  
*come back* **zurückkommen**
- comforter **die Steppdecke**
- compartment **das Abteil**
- complicated **kompliziert**
- computer **der Computer**;  
*computer games* **die Computerspiele** (nt pl)
- concert **das Konzert**
- conditioner (hair) **die Haarspülung**
- condom **das Kondom**
- conductor (bus) **der Schaffner**;  
(orchestra) **der Dirigent**
- conference **die Konferenz**;  
*conference room* **das Konferenzzimmer**
- congratulations! **herzlichen Glückwunsch!**
- consulate **das Konsulat**
- consultant **der/die Berater(in)**
- contact lenses **die Kontaktlinsen**
- contraceptive **das Verhütungsmittel**
- contract **der Vertrag**
- cook **der Koch**; (verb) **kochen**
- cookie **das Plätzchen**
- cool **kühl**
- cork **der Korken**
- corkscrew **der Korkenzieher**
- corner **die Ecke**
- corridor **der Korridor**
- cosmetics **die Kosmetika**
- cost (verb) **kosten**; *what does it cost?* **was kostet das?**
- cotton **die Baumwolle**
- cotton balls **die Watte**
- cough **der Husten**;  
(verb) **husten**
- countertop **die Arbeitsfläche**
- country **das Land**
- cousin (male) **der Vetter**;  
(female) **die Kusine**
- crab **die Krabbe**
- cramp **der Krampf**
- crayfish **der Krebs**
- cream (for cake, etc.) **die Sahne**;  
(lotion) **die Creme**
- credit card **die Kreditkarte**
- crib **das Kinderbett**
- crowded **überfüllt**
- cruise **die Kreuzfahrt**
- crutches **die Krücken** (f pl)



cry (weep) **weinen**;  
 (shout) **rufen**  
 cucumber **die Gurke**  
 cufflinks **die**  
 Manschettenknöpfe (m pl)  
 cup **die Tasse**  
 cupboard **der Schrank**  
 curls **die Locken** (f pl)  
 curry **das Curry**  
 curtain **der Vorhang**  
 cushion **das Kissen**  
 Customs **der Zoll**  
 cut **der Schnitt**;  
 (verb) **schneiden**  
 cycling **das Radfahren**

## D

dad **der Papa**  
 dairy products **die**  
 Molkeerprodukte (nt pl)  
 damp **feucht**  
 dance **der Tanz**; (verb) **tanzen**  
 Dane (man) **der Däne**; (woman)  
**die Dänin**  
 dangerous **gefährlich**  
 Danish **dänisch**  
 Danish pastry **das Teilchen**  
 Danube **die Donau**  
 dark **dunkel**  
 daughter **die Tochter**  
 day **der Tag**  
 dead **tot**  
 deaf **taub**  
 dear (person) **lieb**  
 December **Dezember**  
 deck chair **der Liegestuhl**  
 deck of cards **das Kartenspiel**  
 decorator **der/die Maler(in)**  
 deep **tief**  
 delayed **verspätet**  
 delegate **der/die Delegierte(r)**  
 deliberately **absichtlich**  
 delicatessen **das**  
 Feinkostgeschäft  
 delivery **der Lieferung**  
 Denmark **Dänemark**  
 dentist **der Zahnarzt**  
 dentures **die Prothese**,  
**das Gebiss**  
 deny **bestreiten**  
 deodorant **das Deodorant**  
 department **die Abteilung**  
 department store **das Kaufhaus**  
 departure **die Abfahrt**  
 departure lounge **die Abflughalle**  
 departures **der Abflug**  
 deposit **die Kautions**  
 designer **der/die Grafiker(in)**  
 desserts **der Nachtisch**  
 develop (film) **entwickeln**

diabetic **der/die Diabetiker(in)**  
 diamond (gem) **der Diamant**  
 diamonds (cards) **Karo**  
 diaper **die Windel**  
 diarrhea **der Durchfall**  
 dictionary **das Wörterbuch**  
 die **sterben**  
 diesel **der Diesel**  
 different **verschieden**;  
*that's different!* **das ist etwas**  
**anderes!**; *I'd like a different*  
*kind* **ich möchte gern eine**  
**andere Sorte**  
 difficult **schwierig**  
 dining room **der Speiseraum**  
 dinner **das Abendessen**  
 directory (telephone) **das**  
**Telefonbuch**  
 dirty **schmutzig**  
 disabled **behindert**  
 discounts **die Ermäßigungen**  
 dish towel **das Geschirrtuch**  
 dishwasher **die**  
**Geschirrspülmaschine**  
 dishwashing liquid **das**  
**Spülmittel**  
 disposable diapers **die**  
**Einwegwindeln**  
 dive **der Sprung**;  
 (verb) **tauchen**  
 diving board **das Sprungbett**  
 divorced **geschieden**  
 do **tun**; *how do you do?*  
**guten Tag**; (on being  
 introduced) **freut mich**  
 doctor **der Arzt**  
 document **das Dokument**  
 dog **der Hund**  
 doll **die Puppe**  
 dollar **der Dollar**  
 door **die Tür**  
 double room **das**  
**Doppelzimmer**  
 doughnut **der Berliner**  
 down **herunter**; (position)  
**unten**; *down here* **hier unten**  
 downtown **das Stadtzentrum**  
 drawer **die Schublade**  
 drawing pin **die Heftzwecke**,  
**der Reißnagel**  
 dress **das Kleid**  
 drink **das Getränk**; (verb)  
**trinken**; *would you like*  
*a drink?* **möchten Sie**  
**etwas trinken?**  
 drinking water **das Trinkwasser**  
 drive (verb) **fahren**  
 driver **der/die Fahrer(in)**  
 driver's license **der Führerschein**  
 driveway **die Einfahrt**  
 drops **die Tropfen**

drunk **betrunken**  
 dry **trocken**  
 dry cleaner **die Reinigung**  
 during **während**  
 duster **das Staubtuch**  
 Dutch (adj) **holländisch**  
 Dutchman/woman **der/die**  
**Holländer(in)**  
 duty-free **zollfrei**

## E

each (every) **jeder, alle**; *five euros*  
**each fünf Euro** **das Stück**  
 ear **das Ohr**; *ears* **die**  
**Ohren** (nt pl)  
 early **früh**  
 earrings **die Ohringe** (m pl)  
 east **der Osten**  
 easy **leicht**  
 eat **essen**  
 egg **das Ei**  
 eight **acht**  
 eighteen **achtzehn**  
 eighty **achtzig**  
 either: *either of them* **einer**  
**von beiden**; *either ... or ...*  
**entweder ... oder ...**  
 elastic **elastisch**; *elastic band*  
**das Gummiband**  
 elbow **der Ellbogen**  
 electric **elektrisch**  
 electrical hookup **der**  
**Stromanschluss**  
 electrician **der/die Elektriker(in)**  
 electricity **der Strom**  
 elevator **der Fahrstuhl**  
 eleven **elf**  
 else: *something else* **etwas**  
**anderes**; *someone else*  
**jemand anders**; *somewhere*  
**else woanders**  
 email **die Mail**  
 email address **die Mail Adresse**  
 embarrassing **peinlich**  
 embassy **die Botschaft**  
 emerald **der Smaragd**  
 emergency **der Notfall**  
 emergency brake **die Notbremse**  
 emergency department  
**die Unfallstation**  
 emergency exit **der Notausgang**  
 empty **leer**  
 end **das Ende**  
 engaged (couple) **verlobt**;  
 (occupied) **besetzt**  
 engine (motor) **der Motor**  
 engineering **die Technik**  
 England **England**  
 English (adj) **englisch**;  
 (language) **Englisch**

Englishman/woman **der/die**  
**Engländer(in)**  
 enlargement **die Vergrößerung**  
 enough **genug**  
 entertainment **die Unterhaltung**  
 entrance **der Eingang; entrance**  
 ticket **die Eintrittskarte**  
 envelope **der (Brief) umschlag**  
 epileptic **der/die Epilektiker(in)**  
 escalator **die Rolltreppe**  
 especially **besonders**  
 estimate **der**  
**Kostenvoranschlag**  
 evening **der Abend**  
 every **jeder**  
 everyone **jeder**  
 everything **alles**  
 everywhere **überall**  
 example **das Beispiel; for**  
 example **zum Beispiel**  
 excellent **ausgezeichnet**  
 excess baggage **das Mehrgepäck**  
 exchange (verb) **(um)tauschen**  
 exchange rate **der Wechselkurs**  
 excursion **der Ausflug**  
 excuse me! **Entschuldigung!**  
 executive **der/die Manager(in)**  
 exhaust **der Auspuff**  
 exhibition **die Ausstellung**  
 exit **der Ausgang**  
 expensive **teuer**  
 expressway **die Autobahn**  
 extension cord **die**  
**Verlängerungsschnur**  
 eye **das Auge;**  
 eyes **die Augen**  
 eyebrow **das Augenbraue**

## F

face **das Gesicht**  
 faint (unclear) **bläss; (verb)**  
 ohnmächtig werden  
 fair (funfair) **der Jahrmarkt, die**  
**Kirmes; (just) gerecht, fair**  
 false teeth **die Prothese,**  
**das Gebiss**  
 family **die Familie**  
 fan (ventilator) **der Ventilator;**  
 (enthusiast) **der Fan**  
 fan belt **der Keilriemen**  
 fantastic **fantastisch**  
 far **weit; how far is it?**  
 wie weit ist es?  
 fare **der Fahrpreis**  
 farm **der Bauernhof**  
 farmer **der Bauer**  
 fashion **die Mode**  
 fast **schnell**  
 fat **das Fett; (person) dick**  
 father **der Vater**

February **Februar**  
 feel (touch) **fühlen; I feel hot**  
 mir ist heiß; I feel like ...  
 ich möchte gern ...;  
 I don't feel well **mir ist**  
**nicht gut**  
 feet **die Füße (m pl)**  
 fence **der Zaun**  
 ferry **die Fähre**  
 fever **das Fieber**  
 fiancé **der Verlobte**  
 fiancée **die Verlobte**  
 field **das Feld; (of work)**  
**das Gebiet**  
 fifteen **fünfzehn**  
 fifty **fünfzig**  
 fig **die Feige**  
 filling (in tooth, cake) **die Füllung;**  
 (in sandwich) **der Belag**  
 film **der Film**  
 filter **der Filter**  
 filter papers **das Filterpapier**  
 finger **der Finger**  
 fire **das Feuer**  
 fire extinguisher **der**  
**Feuerlöscher**  
 fireworks **das Feuerwerk**  
 first **erster; first class erster**  
**Klasse**  
 first aid **die Erste Hilfe**  
 first floor **der erste Stock**  
 first name **der Vorname**  
 fish **der Fisch**  
 fishing **das Angeln; to go fishing**  
**Angeln gehen**  
 fishmonger **das Fischgeschäft**  
 five **fünf**  
 fizzy **sprudelnd**  
 flag **die Fahne**  
 flash (camera) **der Blitz**  
 flashlight **die Taschenlampe**  
 flat (level) **flach;**  
 (apartment) **die Wohnung**  
 flat tire **der Platten**  
 flavor **der Geschmack**  
 flea **der Floh**  
 flea spray **das Flohspray**  
 flight **der Flug; flight number**  
**die Flugnummer**  
 flippers **die**  
 (Schwimm)flossen (f pl)  
 floor (ground) **der Fußboden,**  
**der Boden; (story)**  
**der Stock**  
 florist **der Blumenladen**  
 flour **das Mehl**  
 flower **die Blume;**  
 flower-arranging **das**  
**Blumenstecken;**  
 flowerbed **das Blumenbeet**  
 flute **die Flöte**

fly (insect) **die Fliege;**  
 (verb) **fliegen**  
 flysheet **das Überzelt**  
 fog **der Nebel**  
 folk music **die Volksmusik**  
 food **das Essen**  
 food poisoning **die**  
**Lebensmittelvergiftung**  
 foot **der Fuß**  
 for **für; for me für mich;**  
 what for? **wofür?;**  
 for a week **für eine Woche**  
 foreigner **der/die**  
**Ausländer(in)**  
 forest **der Wald**  
 forget **vergessen**  
 fork **die Gabel**  
 forty **vierzig**  
 fountain **der Brunnen**  
 four **vier**  
 fourteen **vierzehn**  
 fourth **vierter**  
 France **Frankreich**  
 free **frei; (no charge) kostenlos,**  
**gratis**  
 freezer **der Gefrierschrank**  
 French **französisch**  
 french fries **die Fritten, die**  
**Pommes (m pl)**  
 Frenchman **der Franzose**  
 Frenchwoman **die Französin**  
 Friday **Freitag**  
 fried **gebraten**  
 friend **der/die Freund(in)**  
 friendly **freundlich**  
 front: in front of ... **vor ...**  
 frost **der Frost**  
 frozen foods **die Tiefkühlkost**  
 fruit **das Obst, die Frucht**  
 fruit juice **der Fruchtsaft**  
 fry **braten**  
 frying pan **die (Brat)pfanne**  
 full **voll; I'm full (up)**  
 ich bin satt  
 full board **Vollpension**  
 funny **komisch**  
 furniture **die Möbel**

## G

garage **die Garage;**  
 (for repairs) **die Werkstatt**  
 garbage **der Abfall**  
 garbage bag **der Müllsack**  
 garden **der Garten**  
 garden center **das Gartencenter**  
 gardener **der/die Gärtner(in)**  
 gardening **die Gartenarbeit**  
 garlic **der Knoblauch**  
 gasoline **das Benzin**  
 gas station **die Tankstelle**

gate **das Tor**; (garden gate)  
**die Pforte**; (at airport)  
**der Flugsteig**  
 gay (homosexual) **schwul**  
 gear **der Gang**  
 gearbox **das Getriebe**  
 gearshift **der Schaltknüppel**  
 gel (hair) **das Gel**  
 German **der/die Deutsche**;  
 (adj) **deutsch**;  
 (language) **Deutsch**  
 Germany **Deutschland**  
 get (fetch) **holen**; *have you got ...?*  
**haben Sie ...?**; *to get the train*  
**den Zug nehmen**  
 get back: *we get back tomorrow*  
**wir kommen morgen**  
**zurück**; *to get something back*  
**etwas zurückbekommen**  
 get in **hereinkommen**; (arrive)  
**ankommen**  
 get off (bus, etc.) **aussteigen**  
 get on (bus, etc.) **einsteigen**  
 get out **herauskommen**;  
 (bring out) **herausholen**  
 get up (rise) **aufstehen**  
 gift **das Geschenk**  
 gin **der Gin**  
 ginger (spice) **der Ingwer**  
 girl **das Mädchen**  
 girlfriend **die Freundin**  
 give **geben**  
 glad **fröhlich**  
 glass **das Glas**  
 glasses **die Brille**  
 gloves **die Handschuhe**  
 glue **der Leim**, **der**  
**Klebstoff**  
 go **gehen**; (travel) **fahren**;  
 (by plane) **fliegen**  
 gold **das Gold**  
 good **gut**  
 goodbye **Auf Wiedersehen**  
 good night **Guten Abend**  
 government **die Regierung**  
 granddaughter **die Enkelin**  
 grandfather **der Großvater**  
 grandmother **die Großmutter**  
 grandparents **die**  
**Großeltern** (m pl)  
 grandson **der Enkel**  
 grapes **die Trauben** (f pl)  
 grass **das Gras**  
 gray **grau**  
 Great Britain **Großbritannien**  
 great: great! **prima!**  
 green **grün**  
 grill **der Grill**  
 grilled **gegrillt**  
 grocery store **das**  
**Lebensmittelgeschäft**

ground floor **das Erdgeschoss**  
 groundsheet **der Zeltboden**  
 guarantee **die Garantie**;  
 (verb) **garantieren**  
 guard **der Wächter**  
 guest **der Gast**  
 guide **der Führer**  
 guidebook **der (Reise)führer**  
 guided tour **die Führung**  
 guitar **die Gitarre**  
 gun (rifle) **das Gewehr**  
 gutter **die Dachrinne**  
 gym **das Sportzentrum**

## H

hair **das Haar**  
 haircut **der Haarschnitt**  
 hairdresser's **der Friseur**;  
 (ladies') **der Friseursalon**  
 hair dryer **der Fön**  
 hair spray **das Haarspray**  
 half **halb**; *half an hour*  
**eine halbe Stunde**  
 half-board **Halbpension**  
 half-brother **der Halbbruder**  
 half-sister **die Halbschwester**  
 ham **der gekochte Schinken**  
 hamburger **der Hamburger**  
 hammer **der Hammer**  
 hamster **der Hamster**  
 hand **die Hand**  
 handbag **die Handtasche**  
 handbrake **die Handbremse**  
 handle (door) **die Klinke**  
 handshake **der Händedruck**  
 handsome **gut aussehend**  
 hangover **der Kater**  
 happy **glücklich**  
 harbor **der Hafen**  
 hard **hart**; (difficult) **schwer**  
 hardware store **der**  
**Eisenwarenhändler**  
 hat **der Hut**  
 have (verb) **haben**: *I have*  
**ich habe**; *you have*  
 (singular informal) **du hast**;  
 (plural informal) **ihr habt**;  
 (singular formal; plural formal)  
**Sie haben**; *we have* **wir**  
**haben**; *they have* **sie haben**;  
*do you have ...?* **haben Sie ...?**;  
*I have to go* **ich muss gehen**  
 hay fever **der Heuschnupfen**  
 he **er**  
 head **der Kopf**  
 headache **die Kopfschmerzen**  
 headlights **die Scheinwerfer**  
 headphones **der Kopfhörer**  
 headquarters **die Zentrale**  
 hear **hören**

hearing aid **das Hörgerät**  
 heart **das Herz**  
 heart condition: *I have a heart*  
 condition **Ich bin herzkrank**  
 hearts (cards) **Herz**  
 heater **das Heizgerät**  
 heating **die Heizung**  
 heavy **schwer**  
 hedge **die Hecke**  
 heel (shoe) **der Absatz**;  
 (foot) **die Ferse**  
 hello **guten Tag**;  
 (on phone) **hallo**  
 help **die Hilfe**; (verb) **helfen**  
 her: *it's her* **sie ist es**;  
*it's for her* **es ist für sie**;  
*give it to her* **geben Sie es ihr**;  
*her book* **ihr Buch**; *her shoes*  
**ihre Schuhe**; *it's hers*  
**es gehört ihr**

hi **hallo**  
 high **hoch**  
 hiking **das Wandern**  
 hill **der Berg**  
 him: *it's him* **er ist es**; *it's for him*  
**es ist für ihn**; *give it to him*  
**geben Sie es ihm**  
 hire **leihen**, **mieten**  
 his: *his book* **sein Buch**;  
*his shoes* **seine Schuhe**;  
*it's his* **es gehört ihm**  
 history **die Geschichte**  
 hitchhike **trampen**  
 HIV-positive **HIV positiv**  
 hobby **das Hobby**  
 holiday **die Ferien**  
 Holland **Holland**  
 home: *at home* **zu Hause**  
 home improvement **das Basteln**  
 homeopathy **die**  
**Homöopathie**  
 honest **ehrlich**  
 honey **der Honig**  
 honeymoon **die**  
**Hochzeitsreise**  
 hood (car) **die Motorhaube**  
 horn (car) **die Hupe**;  
 (animal) **das Horn**  
 horrible **schrecklich**  
 hospital **das Krankenhaus**  
 host **der/die Gastgeber(in)**  
 hour **die Stunde**  
 house **das Haus**  
 household products **die**  
**Haushaltswaren** (f pl)  
 how? **wie?**  
 humanities **die**  
**Geisteswissenschaften** (f pl)  
 hundred **hundert**  
 hungry: *I'm hungry*  
**ich habe Hunger**

*hurry: I'm in a hurry*  
**ich bin in Eile**  
*husband der (Ehe)mann*

**I**  
**ich**  
*ice das Eis*  
*ice cream das Eis, die Eiscreme*  
*ice pop das Eis am Stiel*  
*ice skates die Schlittschuhe*  
*ice-skating: to go ice-skating Schlittschuh laufen gehen*  
**if wenn**  
*ignition die Zündung*  
**ill krank**  
*immediately sofort*  
*impossible unmöglich*  
*in in; in English auf Englisch; in the hotel im Hotel*  
*indigestion die Magenverstimmung*  
*infection die Infektion, die Entzündung*  
*information die Information*  
*injection die Spritze*  
*injury die Verletzung*  
**ink die Tinte**  
*inn das Gasthaus*  
*inner tube der Schlauch*  
*insect das Insekt*  
*insect repellent das Insektenmittel*  
*insomnia die Schlaflosigkeit*  
*instant coffee der Pulverkaffee*  
*insurance die Versicherung*  
*interesting interessant*  
**Internet das Internet**  
*interpret dolmetschen*  
*interpreter der/die Dolmetscher(in)*  
*intravenous drip die intravenöse Infusion*  
*invitation die Einladung*  
*invoice die Rechnung*  
**Ireland Irland**  
**Irish irisch**  
*Irishman der Ire*  
*Irishwoman die Irin*  
*iron (material) das Eisen; (for clothes) das Bügeleisen; (verb) bügeln*  
*is: he/she/it is ... er/sie/es ist ...*  
**island die Insel**  
**it es**  
*Italian der/die Italiener(in); (adj) italienisch*  
**Italy Italien**

**J**  
*jacket die Jacke*  
*jam die Marmelade, die Konfitüre*  
*January Januar*  
*jazz der Jazz*  
*jeans die Jeans*  
*jellyfish die Qualle*  
*jeweler das Juweliergeschäft*  
*jewelry der Schmuck*  
**job die Arbeit**  
*jog (verb) joggen; to go for a jog joggen gehen*  
*jogging suit der Trainingsanzug*  
**joke der Witz**  
*journey die Fahrt, die Reise*  
**July Juli**  
*junper der Pullover*  
**June Juni**  
*just (only) nur; it's just arrived es ist gerade angekommen*

**K**  
*kerosene das Paraffin*  
**key der Schlüssel**  
*keyboard die Tastatur*  
*kidney die Niere*  
**kilo das Kilo**  
*kilometer der Kilometer*  
*kitchen die Küche*  
**knee das Knie**  
**knife das Messer**  
**knit stricken**  
*knitwear die Strickwaren (f pl)*  
*know wissen; (be acquainted with) kennen; I don't know ich weiß nicht*

**L**  
*label das Etikett*  
**lace die Spitze**  
*laces (shoe) die Schnürsenkel (m pl)*  
*ladies' room die Damentoilette*  
**lady die Dame**  
**lake der See**  
*lamb (animal) das Lamm; (meat) das Lammfleisch*  
**lamp die Lampe**  
*lampshade der Lampenschirm*  
**land das Land; (verb) landen**  
**language die Sprache**  
*laptop der Laptop*  
**large groß**  
**last (final) letzter;**  
*last week letzte Woche; at last! endlich!*  
**last name der Nachname**

*late spät; the bus is late der Bus hat Verspätung*  
**later später**  
**laugh lachen**  
*laundromat der Waschsalon*  
*laundry (place) die Wäscherei; (dirty clothes) die Wäsche*  
*laundry detergent das Waschpulver*  
*lawn der Rasen*  
*lawnmower der Rasenmäher*  
*lawyer der Rechtsanwalt/ die Rechtsanwältin*  
**laxative das Abführmittel**  
**lazy faul**  
**lead die Leine**  
**leaf das Blatt**  
*leaflet die Broschüre, der Flyer*  
**learn lernen**  
**leather das Leder**  
*lecture hall der Vorlesungssaal*  
**leeks das Breitlauch, der Porrée**  
*left (not right) links; there's nothing left es ist nichts mehr übrig*  
*left luggage locker das Gepäckschließfach*  
*left side die linke Seite*  
**leg das Bein**  
**lemon die Zitrone**  
*lemon soda die Limonade*  
**length die Länge**  
**lens die Linse**  
**less weniger**  
**lesson die Stunde**  
*letter (post) der Brief; (alphabet) der Buchstabe*  
**lettuce der Kopfsalat**  
**library die Bibliothek, die Bücherei**  
**license die Genehmigung; (driver's) der Führerschein**  
**license plate das Nummernschild**  
**life das Leben**  
*lift: could you give me a lift? können Sie mich mitnehmen?*  
**light das Licht; (adj) leicht; (not dark) hell**  
**light bulb die (Glüh)birne**  
**lighter das Feuerzeug; lighter fuel das Feuerzeugbenzin**  
**light meter der Belichtungsmesser**  
*like: I like you ich mag Sie; I like swimming ich schwimme gern; it's like ... es ist wie ...; like this so*  
**lime (fruit) die Limette**

line (waiting) **die Schlange**; line up **anstehen**  
 lip balm **der Lippen-Fettstift**  
 lipstick **der Lippenstift**  
 liqueur **der Likör**  
 list **die Liste**  
 liter **der Liter**  
 litter **der Abfall**  
 little (small) **klein**; it's a little big **es ist ein bisschen zu groß**;  
 just a little **nur ein bisschen**  
 liver **die Leber**  
 lobster **der Hummer**  
 lollipop **der Lutscher**  
 long **lang**  
 lost property **das Fundbüro**  
 lot: a lot **viel**  
 loud **laut**; (color) **grell**  
 lounge **das Wohnzimmer**;  
 (in hotel) **die Lounge**  
 love **die Liebe**; (verb) **lieben**  
 low **niedrig**; (voice) **tief**  
 luck **das Glück**; good luck! **viel Glück!**  
 luggage **der Koffer**, das **Gepäck**; luggage rack **die Gepäckablage**  
 lunch **das Mittagessen**  
 Luxembourg **Luxemburg**

## M

mad **verrückt**  
 magazine **die Zeitschrift**  
 maid **das Zimmermädchen**  
 mail **die Post**; (verb) **aufgeben**  
 mailbox **der Briefkasten**  
 mail carrier **der/die Briefträger(in)**  
 main courses **die Hauptgerichte**  
 main road **die Hauptstraße**  
 make **machen**  
 makeup **das Make-up**  
 man **der Mann**  
 manager **der Geschäftsführer**  
 many; not many **nicht viele**  
 map (of country) **die Landkarte**;  
 (of town) **der Stadtplan**  
 marble **der Marmor**  
 March **März**  
 margarine **die Margarine**  
 market **der Markt**  
 marmalade **die Orangenmarmelade**  
 married **verheiratet**  
 mascara **das Maskara**,  
 die **Wimperntusche**  
 mass (church) **die Messe**  
 match (light) **das Streichholz**;  
 (sport) **das Spiel**  
 material (fabric) **der Stoff**

matter: it doesn't matter **das macht nichts**  
 mattress **die Matratze**  
 maybe **vielleicht**  
 me: it's me **ich bin's**;  
 it's for me **es ist für mich**;  
 give it to me **geben Sie es mir**  
 meal **das Essen**  
 mean: what does this mean? **was bedeutet das?**  
 meat **das Fleisch**  
 mechanic **der/die Mechaniker(in)**  
 medication **die Medikamente**  
 medicine **die Medizin**  
 meeting **die Besprechung**,  
 das **Treffen**  
 melon **die Melone**  
 men's room **die Herrentoilette**  
 menu **die Speisekarte**  
 message **die Nachricht**  
 metro station **die U-Bahnstation**  
 microwave **die Mikrowelle**  
 middle: in the middle **in der Mitte**  
 midnight **Mitternacht**  
 milk **die Milch**  
 mine: it's mine **es gehört mir**  
 mineral water **das Mineralwasser**  
 minute **die Minute**  
 mirror **der Spiegel**  
 Miss **Fräulein**  
 mistake **der Fehler**  
 modem **das Modem**  
 modern architecture **die moderne Architektur**  
 mom **die Mama**  
 Monday **Montag**  
 money **das Geld**  
 monitor **der Monitor**,  
 der **Bildschirm**  
 month **der Monat**  
 monument **das Denkmal**  
 moon **der Mond**  
 moped **das Moped**  
 more **mehr**  
 morning **der Morgen**; in the morning **am Morgen**  
 mother **die Mutter**  
 motorbike **das Motorrad**  
 motorboat **das Motorboot**  
 mountain **der Berg**  
 mountain bike **das Mountain-Bike**  
 mouse **die Maus**  
 mousse (for hair) **der Schaumfestiger**  
 mouth **der Mund**  
 move (verb) **bewegen**; (house) **umziehen**; don't move! **stillhalten!**  
 movie **der Film**

movie theater **das Kino**  
 Mr. **Herr**  
 Mrs. **Frau**  
 Ms. **Frau**  
 much **viel**  
 Munich **München**  
 museum **das Museum**  
 mushroom **der Pilz**  
 music **die Musik**  
 musical instrument **das Musikinstrument**  
 musician **der/die Musiker(in)**  
 mussels **die Muscheln** (f pl)  
 must: I must ... **ich muss ...**  
 mustache **der Schnurrbart**  
 mustard **der Senf**  
 my: my book **mein Buch**;  
 my keys **meine Schlüssel**

## N

nail (metal, finger) **der Nagel**  
 nail clippers **der Nagelzwickler**  
 nailfile **die Nagelfeile**  
 nail polish **der Nagellack**  
 name **der Name**; what's your name? **wie heißen Sie?**  
 napkin **die Serviette**  
 near **nah**; near the door **nahe der Tür**; near London **in der Nähe von London**  
 necessary **notwendig**  
 neck **der Hals**  
 necklace **die Halskette**  
 need (verb) **brauchen**;  
 I need ... **ich brauche ...**;  
 there's no need **das ist nicht nötig**  
 needle **die Nadel**  
 negative (photo) **das Negativ**  
 nephew **der Neffe**  
 Netherlands **die Niederlande**  
 never **nie**  
 new **neu**  
 news **die Nachrichten**  
 newspaper **die Zeitung**  
 newsstand **der Zeitungsladen**  
 New Zealand **Neuseeland**  
 New Zealander **der/die Neuseeländer(in)**  
 next **nächster**;  
 next week **nächste Woche**  
 nice (attractive) **hübsch**;  
 (pleasant) **angenehm**;  
 (to eat) **lecker**  
 niece **die Nichte**  
 night **die Nacht**  
 nightclub **der Nachtclub**  
 nightgown **das Nachthemd**  
 night porter **der Nachtportier**  
 nightstand **der Nachttisch**

nine **neun**  
 nineteen **neunzehn**  
 ninety **neunzig**  
 no (response) **nein**;  
   I have no money  
   **ich habe kein Geld**  
 noisy **laut**  
 noon **der Mittag**  
 north **der Norden**  
 Northern Ireland **Nordirland**  
 North Sea **die Nordsee**  
 nose **die Nase**  
 not **nicht**  
 notebook **das Notizbuch**  
 notepad **der Notizblock**  
 notes **die Banknoten** (f pl)  
 nothing **nichts**  
 novel **der Roman**  
 November **November**  
 now **jetzt**  
 nowhere **nirgendwo**  
 number **die Zahl**;  
   (phone) **die Nummer**  
 nurse (man) **der**  
   **Krankenpfleger**; (woman)  
   **die Krankenschwester**  
 nut (fruit) **die Nuss**;  
   (for bolt) **die Mutter**

## O

occasionally **gelegentlich**  
 October **Oktober**  
 of **von**; *the name of the hotel*  
   **der Name des Hotels**  
 office **das Büro**  
 often **oft**  
 oil **das Öl**  
 ointment **die Salbe**  
 OK **okay**  
 old **alt**; *how old are you?*  
   **wie alt sind Sie?**  
 olive **die Olive**  
 omelet **das Omelette**  
 on ... **auf ...**  
 one (number) **eins**;  
   *one beer/sausage*  
   **ein Bier/eine Wurst**  
 one million **eine Million**  
 one-way ticket **die einfache**  
   **Fahrkarte**  
 onion **die Zwiebel**  
 only **nur**  
 open (verb) **öffnen**;  
   (adj) **offen**  
 opening times **die**  
   **Öffnungszeiten**  
 opera **die Oper**  
 operating room **der**  
   **Operationssaal**  
 operation **die Operation**

operator **die Vermittlung**  
 optician **Augenarzt/**  
   **Augenärztin**  
 or **oder**  
 orange (color) **orange**;  
   (fruit) **die Orange**  
 orange juice **der Orangensaft**  
 orchestra **das Orchester**  
 ordinary **gewöhnlich**  
 other: *the other ...* **der/die/**  
   **das andere ...**  
 our **unser**; *it's ours* **es gehört uns**  
 out **aus**; *he's out* **er ist nicht da**  
 outside **außerhalb**  
 oven **der Backofen**  
 over (more than) **über**; (finished)  
   **vorbei**; (across) **über**; *over*  
   *there* **dort drüben**  
 overpass **die Überführung**  
 oyster **die Auster**

## P

pacifier (for baby) **der Schnuller**  
 package **das Paket**  
 pack (cigarettes) **die Schachtel**  
 padlock **das Vorhängeschloss**  
 page **die Seite**  
 pain **der Schmerz**  
 painkiller (medicine)  
   **die Schmerztablette**  
 paint **die Farbe**  
 pair **das Paar**  
 pajamas **der Schlafanzug**  
 palace **der Palast**  
 pale **bläss**  
 pancake **der Pfannkuchen**  
 pants **die Hose**  
 pantyhose **die Strumpfhose**  
 paper **das Papier**; (newspaper)  
   **die Zeitung**  
 parcel **das Paket**  
 pardon? **wie bitte?**  
 parents **die Eltern** (m pl)  
 park **der Park**; (verb) **parken**;  
   *no parking* **Parken verboten**  
 parking lot **der Parkplatz**  
 parsley **die Petersilie**  
 part (hair) **der Scheitel**  
 party (celebration) **die Party**;  
   (group) **die Gruppe**;  
   (political) **die Partei**  
 pass **überholen**  
 passenger **der Fahrgast**,  
   **der Passagier**  
 passport **der Pass**, **der Ausweis**;  
   *passport control*  
   **die Passkontrolle**  
 password **das Passwort**  
 pasta **die Nudeln**  
 pastry **das Gebäck**

path **der Weg**  
 pay **bezahlen**  
 payment **die Bezahlung**  
 peach **der Pfirsich**  
 peanuts **die Erdnüsse** (f pl)  
 pear **die Birne**  
 pearl **die Perle**  
 peas **die Erbsen** (f pl)  
 pedestrian **der Fußgänger**  
 pedestrian zone **die**  
   **Fußgängerzone**  
 pair (clothes) **die**  
   **Wäscheklammer**;  
   (tent) **der Hering**  
 pen **der Stift**  
 pencil **der Bleistift**; *pencil*  
   *sharpener* **der Bleistiftspitzer**  
 penicillin **das Penizillin**  
 penknife **das Taschenmesser**  
 pen-pal **der/die Brieffreund(in)**  
 people **die Leute** (m pl)  
 pepper **der Pfeffer**; (red/green)  
   **die Paprika**  
 peppermints **die**  
   **Pfefferminzbonbons**  
 per: *per night* **pro Nacht**  
 perfect **perfekt**  
 perfume **das Parfüm**  
 perhaps **vielleicht**  
 perm **die Dauerwelle**  
 pet passport **der Tierpass**  
 pets **die Haustiere** (nt pl)  
 pharmacy **die Apotheke**  
 phone card **die Telefonkarte**  
 photocopy **der Fotokopierer**  
 photograph **das Foto**;  
   (verb) **fotografieren**  
 photographer **der Fotograf**  
 phrasebook **der Sprachführer**  
 piano **das Klavier**  
 pickpocket **der Taschendieb**  
 pickup (postal) **die Leerung**  
 picnic **das Picknick**  
 piece **das Stück**  
 pill **die Tablette**  
 pillow **das Kopfkissen**  
 pilot **der/die Pilot(in)**  
 pin **die Stecknadel**  
 PIN (number) **die Geheimzahl**  
 pineapple **die Ananas**  
 pink **rosa**  
 pipe (for smoking) **die Pfeife**; (for  
   water) **die Pumpe**, **das Rohr**  
 piston **der Kolben**  
 place **der Platz**; (town, etc.) **der**  
   **Ort**; *at your place* **bei Ihnen**  
 planner (calendar) **das Tagebuch**  
 plant **die Pflanze**  
 plastic **das Plastik**  
 plastic bag **die Tragetasche**,  
   **die Plastiktüte**

plate **der Teller**  
 platform **das Gleis,**  
**der Bahnsteig**  
 play (theater) **das Stück;**  
 (verb) **spielen**  
 please **bitte**  
 plug (electrical) **der Stecker;**  
 (sink) **der Stöpsel**  
 plumber **der/die Klempner(in)**  
 pocket **die Tasche**  
 poison **das Gift**  
 Poland **Polen**  
 Pole (man) **der Pole;**  
 (woman) **die Polin**  
 police **die Polizei**  
 police officer **der/die Polizist(in)**  
 police report **der Polizeibericht**  
 police station **das**  
**Polizeirevier**  
 Polish **polnisch**  
 politics **die Politik**  
 poor **arm;** (bad quality)  
**schlecht**  
 pop music **die Popmusik**  
 pork **das Schweinefleisch**  
 port (harbor) **der Hafen**  
 porter (hotel) **der Portier**  
 possible **möglich**  
 postcard **die Postkarte**  
 poster **das Poster**  
 post office **das Postamt**  
 potato **die Kartoffel**  
 pottery **die Töpferei**  
 poultry **das Geflügel**  
 pound (money, weight)  
**das Pfund**  
 pram **der Kinderwagen**  
 prefer: I prefer ... **ich**  
**mag lieber ...**  
 pregnant **schwanger**  
 prescription **das Rezept**  
 presentation **der Vortrag**  
 pretty (beautiful) **schön;**  
 (quite) **ziemlich;**  
 pretty good **recht gut**  
 price **der Preis**  
 priest **Geistliche**  
 printer **der Drucker**  
 private **privat**  
 problem **das Problem**  
 professor **der/die**  
**Professor(in)**  
 profits **der Gewinn**  
 public **öffentlich**  
 public holiday **der Feiertag**  
 pull **ziehen**  
 puncture **die Reifenpanne**  
 purple **lila**  
 purse **das Portemonnaie**  
 push **drücken**  
 put **legen, stellen, setzen**

**Q**  
 quality **die Qualität**  
 quarter **das Viertel**  
 quay **der Kai**  
 question **die Frage**  
 quick **schnell**  
 quiet **still, ruhig**  
 quite (fairly) **ziemlich;**  
 (fully) **ganz**

**R**  
 rabbit **das Kaninchen**  
 radiator **der Heizkörper;**  
 (car) **der Kühler**  
 radio **das Radio**  
 radish **der Rettich;** (small red)  
**das Radieschen**  
 railroad **die Bahn**  
 rain **der Regen**  
 raincoat **der Regenmantel**  
 raisins **die Rosinen** (f pl)  
 rake **der Rechen**  
 rare (uncommon) **selten;**  
 (steak) **blutig**  
 raspberries **die Himbeeren** (f pl)  
 rat **die Ratte**  
 razor blades **die Rasierklingen**  
 (f pl)  
 read **lesen**  
 reading lamp **die Leselampe**  
 ready **fertig**  
 rear lights **die Rücklichter** (f pl)  
 receipt **die Quittung**  
 reception **der Empfang**  
 receptionist **die**  
**Empfangsperson**  
 record (music) **die Schallplatte;**  
 (sports, etc.) **der Rekord**  
 record store **das**  
**Schallplattengeschäft**  
 red **rot**  
 refreshments **die Erfrischungen**  
 (f pl)  
 refrigerator **der Kühlschrank**  
 registered mail **das Einschreiben**  
 relative **der Verwandte**  
 relax **sich entspannen**  
 religion **die Religion**  
 remember **sich erinnern;**  
 I don't remember  
**ich erinnere mich nicht**  
 rent (verb) **mieten**  
 report **der Bericht**  
 research **die Forschungen**  
 reservation **die**  
**Reservierung**  
 rest (remainder) **der Rest;**  
 (verb) **sich ausruhen**  
 restaurant **das Restaurant**

return (come back)  
**zurückkommen;**  
 (give back) **zurückgeben**  
 rhubarb **der Rhabarber**  
 rice **der Reis**  
 rich **reich**  
 right (correct) **richtig;**  
 (direction) **rechts**  
 right side **die rechte Seite**  
 ring (jewelry) **der Ring;**  
 (verb: to call) **anrufen**  
 ripe **reif**  
 river **der Fluss**  
 road **die Straße**  
 roasted **geröstet**  
 robbery **der Diebstahl**  
 rock (stone) **der Stein;**  
 (music) **der Rock**  
 roll (bread) **das Brötchen**  
 roof **das Dach**  
 room **das Zimmer;**  
 (space) **der Raum**  
 room service **der Zimmerservice**  
 rope **das Seil**  
 rose **die Rose**  
 round (circular) **rund**  
 round-trip ticket **die**  
**Rückfahrkarte**  
 rubber (eraser) **der**  
**Radiergummi;**  
 (material) **der Gummi**  
 ruby (gem) **der Rubin**  
 rug (mat) **der Läufer;**  
 (blanket) **die Woldecke**  
 ruins **die Ruinen** (f pl)  
 ruler (for drawing) **das Lineal**  
 rum **der Rum**  
 run (verb) **laufen**  
 runway **die Start- und**  
**Landebahn**

**S**  
 sad **traurig**  
 safe **sicher**  
 safety pin **die**  
**Sicherheitsnadel**  
 sailboat **das Segelboot**  
 sailing **das Segeln**  
 salad **der Salat**  
 salami **die Salami**  
 sale (at lower prices)  
**der Schlussverkauf**  
 sales **der Absatz**  
 salmon **der Lachs**  
 salt **das Salz**  
 same: the same dress **das gleiche**  
**Kleid; same again, please**  
**nochmal dasselbe, bitte**  
 sand **der Sand**  
 sandals **die Sandalen** (f pl)

- sandwich **das Sandwich**,  
**das Butterbrot**  
sanitary napkins **die**  
**Damenbinden** (f pl)  
Saturday **Samstag**  
sauce **die Soße**  
saucepan **der Kochtopf**  
saucer **die Untertasse**  
sauna **die Sauna**  
sausages **die Würst**  
say **sagen**; *what did you say?* **was**  
**haben Sie gesagt?**; *how do*  
*you say ...?* **wie sagt man ...?**  
Scandinavia **Skandinavien**  
scarf **der Schal**; (head)  
**das Kopftuch**  
schedule **der Zeitplan**;  
(train, bus) **der Fahrplan**  
school **die Schule**  
scissors **die Schere**  
Scotland **Schottland**  
Scotsman **der Schotte**  
Scotswoman **die Schottin**  
Scottish **schottisch**  
screen **der Bildschirm**  
screw **die Schraube**  
screwdriver **der**  
**Schraubenzieher**  
sea **das Meer**  
seafood **die Meeresfrüchte** (f pl)  
seat **der Sitz**  
seatbelt **der Sicherheitsgurt**  
second (time) **die Sekunde**;  
(in series) **zweiter**; *second*  
*class* **zweiter Klasse**  
secretary **der/die Sekretär(in)**  
see **sehen**; *I can't see* **ich kann**  
**nichts sehen**; *I see* **ich**  
**verstehe**; *see you soon*  
**bis bald**; *see you tomorrow*  
**bis Morgen**  
self-employed **selbständig**  
sell **verkaufen**  
seminar **das Seminar**  
separate **getrennt**  
separated: *we are separated*  
**wir leben getrennt**  
separately **getrennt**  
September **September**  
serious **ernst**  
seven **sieben**  
seventeen **siebzehn**  
seventy **siebzig**  
several **mehrere**  
sew **nähen**  
shampoo **das Shampoo**  
shave: *to shave* **sich rasieren**  
shaving foam **die Rasiercreme**  
shawl **das Umhängetuch**  
she **sie**  
sheet **das (Bett)laken**
- shell **die Muschel**  
shellfish (as food) **die**  
**Meeresfrüchte** (f pl)  
sherry **der Sherry**  
ship **das Schiff**  
shirt **das Hemd**  
shoelaces **die Schnürsenkel**  
(m pl)  
shoe polish **die Schuhcreme**  
shoe store **das Schuhgeschäft**  
shoes **die Schuhe** (m pl)  
shop **das Geschäft**  
shopkeeper **der/die**  
**Verkäufer(in)**  
shopping **das Einkaufen**; (items  
bought) **die Einkäufe**; *to go*  
*shopping* **einkaufen gehen**  
short **kurz**  
shorts **die Shorts**  
shoulder **die Schulter**  
shower (bath) **die Dusche**;  
(rain) **der Schauer**  
shower gel **das Duschgel**  
shrimp **die Krabben** (f pl)  
shutter (camera) **der Verschluss**;  
(window) **der Fensterladen**  
sick (ill) **krank**; *I feel sick* **mir ist**  
**übel**; *to be sick* (vomit)  
**sich übergeben**  
side **die Seite**; (edge) **die Kante**  
sidelights **das Standlicht**  
sidewalk **der Bürgersteig**  
sightseeing **die Besichtigungen**  
sign **das Schild**  
silk **die Seide**  
silver (metal) **das Silber**;  
(color) **silber**  
simple **einfach**  
sing **singen**  
singing **das Singen**  
single (one) **einzig**; (unmarried)  
**ledig, single**  
single room **das Einzelzimmer**  
sister **die Schwester**  
sister-in-law **die Schwägerin**  
six **sechs**  
sixteen **sechzehn**  
sixty **sechzig**  
ski (verb) **Ski fahren**  
ski binding **die Skibindung**  
ski boots **die Skistiefel** (m pl)  
skid (verb) **schleudern**  
skiing: *to go skiing*  
**Skifahren gehen**  
ski lift **der Skilift**  
ski poles **die Skistöcke** (m pl)  
ski resort **der Skiurlaubsort**  
skin cleanser **der Hautreiniger**  
skirt **der Rock**  
skis **die Skier** (m pl)  
sky **der Himmel**
- sled **der Schlitten**  
sleep **der Schlaf**;  
(verb) **schlafen**  
sleeping bag **der Schlafsack**  
sleeping pill **die Schlaftablette**  
sleeve **der Ärmel**  
slice of ... **das Stück ...**  
slippers **die Pantoffeln** (m pl)  
slow **langsam**  
small **klein**  
smell **der Geruch**;  
(verb) **riechen**  
smile **das Lächeln**;  
(verb) **lächeln**  
smoke **der Rauch**;  
(verb) **rauchen**  
snack **der Imbiss**  
snow **der Schnee**  
so **so**; *not so much*  
**nicht so viel**  
soaking solution  
(for contact lenses) **die**  
**Aufbewahrungslösung**  
soap **die Seife**  
socks **die Socken** (f pl)  
soccer **der Fußball**  
soda water **das Sodawasser**  
sofa **die Couch**, **das Sofa**  
soft **weich**  
soil **die Erde**  
somebody **jemand**  
somehow **irgendwie**  
something **etwas**  
sometimes **manchmal**  
somewhere **irgendwo**  
son **der Sohn**  
song **das Lied**  
sorry! (apology) **Verzeihung!**,  
**Entschuldigung!**; *I'm sorry*  
**es tut mir Leid**  
soup **die Suppe**  
south **der Süden**  
South Africa **Südafrika**  
souvenir **das Souvenir**  
spa **der Kurort**  
spade (shovel) **der Spaten**  
spades (cards) **Pik**  
spares **die Ersatzteile** (nt pl)  
spark plug **die Zündkerze**  
sparkling water **Wasser mit**  
**Kohlensäure**, **das**  
**Sprudelwasser**  
speak **sprechen**; *do you speak*  
*English?* **sprechen Sie**  
**Englisch?**; *I don't speak German*  
**ich spreche kein Deutsch**  
speed **die Geschwindigkeit**  
spider **die Spinne**  
spinach **der Spinat**  
spoon **der Löffel**  
sport **der Sport**



spring (mechanical) **die Feder**;  
(season) **der Frühling**  
square (shape) **das Quadrat**;  
(in town) **der Platz**  
stadium **das Stadion**  
staircase **die Treppe**  
stairs **die Treppe**  
stamp **die Briefmarke**  
stand **der Stand**  
stapler **der Hefter**  
star **der Stern**; (film) **der Star**  
start **der Start, der Anfang**;  
(verb) **anfangen**  
statement **die Aussage**  
station **der Bahnhof**;  
(underground) **die Station**  
statue **die Statue**  
steak **das Steak**  
steal **stehlen**; *it's been stolen*  
**es ist gestohlen worden**  
steamed **gedämpft**  
steamer (boat) **der Dampfer**;  
(cooking) **der Dampfkochtopf**  
steering wheel **das Lenkrad**  
stepdaughter **der Stieftochter**  
stepfather **der Stiefvater**  
stepmother **der Stiefmutter**  
stepson **der Stiefsohn**  
stereo system **die Musikanlange**  
still water **Wasser**  
**ohne Kohlensäure,**  
**das Tafelwasser**  
sting **der Stich**;  
(verb) **stechen**  
stockings **die Strümpfe** (m pl)  
stomach **der Magen**  
stomachache **die Magenschmerzen**  
stop (bus stop) **die Haltestelle**;  
(verb) **anhalten**; *stop!* **halt!**  
storm **der Sturm**  
stove **der Herd**  
strawberries **die Erdbeeren** (f pl)  
stream (water) **der Bach**  
street **die Straße**  
string (cord) **der Faden**;  
(guitar, etc.) **die Saite**  
stroller **der Sportwagen**  
strong (person, drink) **stark**;  
(material) **stabil**;  
(taste) **streng**  
student **der/die Student(in)**  
stupid **dumm**  
suburbs **der Stadtrand**  
subway **die U-Bahn**  
sugar **der Zucker**  
suit **der Anzug**; *it suits you*  
**es steht Ihnen**  
suitcase **der Koffer**  
sun **die Sonne**

sunbathe **sonnenbaden**  
sunburn **der Sonnenbrand**  
Sunday **Sonntag**  
sunglasses **die Sonnenbrille**  
sunny; *it's sunny* **es ist sonnig**  
sunshade **der Sonnenschirm**  
suntan: *to get a suntan*  
**braun werden**  
suntan lotion **das Sonnenöl**  
suntanned **braungebrannt**  
superior **Vorgesetzte**  
supermarket **der Supermarkt**  
supper **das Abendessen**  
supplement **der Zuschlag**  
suppository **das Zäpfchen**  
sure **sicher**  
suspenders **die Hosenträger**  
(nt pl)  
sweat **der Schweiß**;  
(verb) **schwitzen**  
sweatshirt **das Sweatshirt**  
sweet (not sour) **süß**;  
(confectionery) **die Süßigkeit,**  
**der Bonbon**  
swim (verb) **schwimmen**  
swimming **das Schwimmen**  
swimming pool **das Schwimmbad**  
swimming trunks **die Badehose**  
swimsuit **der Badeanzug**  
Swiss **der/die Schweizer(in)**;  
(adj) **schweizerisch**  
switch **der Schalter**  
Switzerland **die Schweiz**  
swivel chair **der Drehstuhl**  
synagogue **die Synagoge**  
syringe **die Spritze**  
syrup **der Sirup**

**T**.....  
table **der Tisch**  
tablet **die Tablette**  
take **nehmen**  
takeoff **der Abflug**  
talcum powder **der Puder**  
talk **das Gespräch**;  
(verb) **reden**  
tall **groß**  
tampons **die Tampons** (m pl)  
tangerine **die Mandarine**  
tap **der Hahn**  
tapestry **der Wandteppich**  
taxi **das Taxi**  
taxi stand **der Taxistand**  
tea **der Tee**; *black tea* **der schwarze Tee**; *tea with milk*  
**der Tee mit Milch**  
teacher **der/die Lehrer(in)**  
teakettle **der Wasserkessel**

telephone **das Telefon**;  
(verb) **telefonieren**  
telephone booth **die Telefonzelle**  
television **das Fernsehen**; *to watch television* **fernsehen**  
temperature **die Temperatur**;  
(fever) **das Fieber**  
ten **zehn**  
tennis **das Tennis**  
tent **das Zelt**  
tent peg **der Hering**  
ten thousand **zehntausend**  
tent pole **die Zeltstange**  
terminal **das Terminal**  
terrace **die Terrasse**  
than: *bigger than* **größer als**  
thank (verb) **danken**;  
**thanks danke**;  
**thank you danke schön**  
that: *that man* **dieser Mann**;  
*that woman* **diese Frau**;  
*what's that?* **was ist das?**;  
*I think that ...* **ich denke,**  
**dass ...**  
the **der** (masculine singular);  
**die** (feminine singular); **das**  
(neuter singular); **die** (plural)  
theater **das Theater**  
their: *their room* **ihr Zimmer**;  
*their books* **ihre Bücher**; *it's theirs* **es gehört ihnen**  
them: *it's them* **sie sind es**;  
*it's for them* **es ist für sie**;  
*give it to them*  
**geben Sie es ihnen**  
then **dann**  
there **da**; *there is/are ...* **es gibt ...**;  
*is/are there ...?* **gibt es ...?**  
these **diese**  
they **sie**  
thick **dick**  
thief **der Dieb**  
thin **dünn**  
think **denken**; *I think so* **ich glaube ja**; *I'll think about it* **ich überlege es mir**  
third **dritter**  
thirsty **durstig**; *I'm thirsty* **ich habe Durst**  
thirteen **dreizehn**  
thirty **Dreißig**  
this: *this man* **dieser Mann**;  
*this woman* **diese Frau**;  
*what's this?* **was ist das?**;  
*this is Mr ...* **das ist Herr ...**  
those **diese da**;  
*those things* **die Dinge dort**  
thousand **tausend**  
three **drei**  
three hundred **dreihundert**  
throat **die Kehle**

throat *lozenges* die  
**Halbtableten** (f pl)  
 through **durch**  
 thunderstorm **das Gewitter**  
 Thursday **Donnerstag**  
 ticket **die Karte**; *ticket kiosk*  
**der Schalter**  
 tide: *high tide* **die Flut**;  
*low tide* **die Ebbe**  
 tie **die Krawatte**;  
 (verb) **festmachen**  
 tight **eng**  
 tiles **die Kacheln** (f pl)  
 time **die Zeit**; *what's the time?*  
**wie spät ist es?**  
 tip (money) **das Trinkgeld**;  
 (end) **die Spitze**  
 tire **der Reifen**  
 tired **müde**  
 tissues **die Taschentücher**  
 to: *to England* **nach England**;  
*to the station* **zum Bahnhof**;  
*to the doctor* **zum Arzt**  
 toast **der Toast**  
 tobacco **der Tabak**  
 toboggan **der Schlitten**  
 today **heute**  
 together **zusammen**  
 toilet **die Toilette**  
 toilet paper **das Toilettenpapier**  
 tomato **die Tomate**  
 tomato juice **der Tomatensaft**  
 tomorrow **morgen**  
 tongue **die Zunge**  
 tonic **das Tonic**  
 tonight **heute abend**  
 too (also) **auch**;  
 (excessively) **zu**  
 tooth **der Zahn**  
 toothache **die Zahnschmerzen**  
 toothbrush **die Zahnbürste**  
 toothpaste **die Zahnpasta**  
 tour **die Rundreise**  
 tour guide **der/die**  
**Reiseleiter(in)**  
 tourist **der/die Tourist(in)**  
 tourist office **das**  
**Verkehrsbüro, das**  
**Fremdenverkehrsbüro**  
 towel **das Handtuch**  
 tower **der Turm**  
 town **die Stadt**  
 town hall **das Rathaus**  
 toy **das Spielzeug**  
 tractor **der Traktor**  
 trade fair **die Handelsmesse**  
 tradition **die Tradition**  
 traffic **der Verkehr**  
 traffic jam **der Stau**  
 traffic lights **die Ampel**  
 trailer **der Anhänger**

train **der Zug**  
 trainee **der/die**  
**Auszubildende**  
 tram **die Straßenbahn**  
 translate **übersetzen**  
 translator **der/die**  
**Übersetzer(in)**  
 trash can **die Mülleimer, die**  
**Mülltonne**  
 travel agency **das Reisebüro**  
 tray **das Tablett**  
 tree **der Baum**  
 truck **der Lastwagen**  
 true **wahr**  
 trunk (car) **der Kofferraum**  
 try **versuchen**  
 Tuesday **Dienstag**  
 tunnel **der Tunnel**  
 Turk (man) **der Türke**;  
 (woman) **die Türkin**  
 Turkey **die Türkei**  
 Turkish **türkisch**  
 turn signal; **der Blinker**  
 tweezers **die Pinzette**  
 twelve **zwölf**  
 twenty **zwanzig**  
 twin beds **die zwei**  
**Einzelbetten**  
 two **zwei**  
 typewriter **die**  
**Schreibmaschine**

## U

ugly **hässlich**  
 umbrella **der (Regen)schirm**  
 uncle **der Onkel**  
 under ... **unter ...**  
 underpants **die Unterhose**  
 undershirt **der Unterrock**  
 understand **verstehen**;  
*I don't understand*  
**ich verstehe nicht**  
 underwear **die Unterwäsche**  
 university **die Universität**  
 unleaded **bleifrei**  
 until **bis**  
 unusual **ungewöhnlich**  
 up **oben**; *up there* **da oben**  
 upward **nach oben**  
 urgent **dringend**  
 us: *it's us* **wir sind es**; *it's*  
*for us* **es ist für uns**;  
*give it to us* **geben**  
**Sie es uns**  
 use **der Gebrauch**; (verb)  
**gebrauchen**; *it's no use*  
**es hat keinen Zweck**  
 useful **hilfreich**  
 usual **gewöhnlich**  
 usually **gewöhnlich**

## V

vacancy (room) **ein**  
**freies Zimmer**  
 vacation **der Urlaub**  
 vaccination **die Impfung**  
 vacuum cleaner **der Staubsauger**  
 valley **das Tal**  
 valuables **die Wertsachen** (f pl)  
 valve **das Ventil**  
 vanilla **die Vanille**  
 vase **die Vase**  
 veal **das Kalbfleisch**  
 vegetable **das Gemüse**  
 vegetarian **der/die**  
**Vegetarier(in)**;  
 (adj) **vegetarisch**  
 vehicle **das Fahrzeug**  
 very **sehr**  
 vest **das (Unter)hemd**  
 vet **der Tierarzt**  
 video (tape, film) **das Video**;  
 VCR **der Videorecorder**;  
 video tape **die Videocassette**  
 Vienna **Wien**  
 view **der Blick**  
 viewfinder **der Sucher**  
 villa **die Villa**  
 village **das Dorf**  
 vinegar **der Essig**  
 violin **die Geige**  
 visit **der Besuch**;  
 (verb) **besuchen**  
 visiting hours **die Besuchszeit**  
 visitor **der/die Besucher(in)**  
 vitamin tablet **die**  
**Vitamintablette**  
 vodka **der Wodka**  
 voice **die Stimme**  
 voicemail **die Voice-mail**

## W

wait **warten**;  
*wait!* **warten Sie!**  
 waiter **der Ober**;  
*waiter!* **Herr Ober!**  
 waiting room **das**  
**Wartezimmer**; (station)  
**der Wartesaal**  
 waitress **die Kellnerin**;  
*waitress!* **Fräulein!**  
 Wales **Wales**  
 walk **der Spaziergang**;  
 (verb) **gehen**; *to go for a walk*  
**spazieren gehen**  
 wall (inside) **die Wand**;  
 (outside) **die Mauer**  
 wallet **die Brieftasche**  
 war **der Krieg**  
 wardrobe **der Kleiderschrank**

warm **warm**  
 was: I was **ich war**;  
     he/she/it was **er/sie/es war**  
 wasp **die Wespe**  
 watch **die (Armband)uhr**;  
     (verb) **ansehen**  
 water **das Wasser**  
 waterfall **der Wasserfall**  
 water heater **das**  
     **Heißwassergerät**  
 wave **die Welle**;  
     (verb: with hand) **winken**  
 wavy (hair) **wellig**  
 we **wir**  
 weather **das Wetter**  
 website **die Webseite**  
 wedding **die Hochzeit**  
 Wednesday **Mittwoch**  
 weeds **das Unkraut**  
 week **die Woche**  
 welcome **willkommen**;  
     you're welcome **keine Ursache**  
 well done (steak) **durchgebraten**  
 wellingtons (boots) **die**  
     **Gummistiefel**  
 Welsh **walisisch**  
 Welshman/woman **der/die**  
     **Waliser(in)**  
 were: you were (singular informal)  
     **du warst**; (singular formal;  
     plural) **Sie waren**; we/they  
     were **wir/sie waren**  
 west **der Westen**  
 wet **naß**  
 what? **was?**  
 wheel **das Rad**  
 wheelchair **der Rollstuhl**;  
     wheelchair access **der**  
     **Rollstuhlfahrer**  
 when? **wann?**  
 where? **wo?**  
 whether **ob**  
 which? **welcher?**  
 whiskey **der Whisky**  
 white **weiß**  
 who? **wer?**  
 why? **warum?**  
 wide **breit**  
 wife **die (Ehe)frau**  
 wind **der Wind**  
 window **das Fenster**;  
     window box  
     **der Blumenkasten**  
 windshield **die**  
     **Windschutzscheibe**  
 wine **der Wein**  
 wine list **die Weinkarte**  
 wing **der Flügel**  
 with **mit**  
 without **ohne**  
 witness **der/die Zeuge(in)**

woman **die Frau**  
 wood (material) **das Holz**  
 wool **die Wolle**  
 word **das Wort**  
 work **die Arbeit**; (verb)  
     **arbeiten**; (machine, etc.)  
     **funktionieren**  
 worse **schlechter**  
 worst **schlechtest**  
 wrapping paper **das Packpapier**;  
     (for presents) **das**  
     **Geschenkpapier**  
 wrench **der**  
     **Schraubenschlüssel**  
 wrist **das Handgelenk**  
 writing paper **das**  
     **Schreibpapier**  
 wrong **falsch**

## X, Y, Z

X-ray **die Röntgenaufnahme**  
 X-ray department **die**  
     **Röntgenabteilung**  
 year **das Jahr**  
 yellow **gelb**  
 yes **ja**  
 yesterday **gestern**  
 yet: is it ready yet? **ist es schon**  
     **fertig?**; not yet **noch nicht**  
 yogurt **der Jogurt**  
 you (singular informal) **du**;  
     (singular formal; plural) **Sie**;  
     for you **für dich/Sie**;  
     with you **mit dir/Ihnen**  
 your (singular informal) **dein**;  
     (singular formal; plural) **Ihr**;  
     your shoes **deine/Ihre Schuhe**  
 yours: is this yours?  
     (singular informal) **gehört das**  
     **dir?** (singular formal; plural)  
     **gehört das Ihnen?**  
 youth hostel **die Jugendherberge**  
 ZIP code **die Postleitzahl**  
 zipper **der Reißverschluss**  
 zoo **der Zoo**

# DICTIONARY

## German to English

The gender of German nouns listed here is indicated by the abbreviations *m* for masculine, *f* for feminine, and *nt* for neuter. Plural nouns are followed by the abbreviations *m pl*, *f pl*, and *nt pl*. The feminine form of most occupations and personal attributes is made by adding **-in** to the masculine form:

**Buchhalter(in)** accountant, for example. Exceptions to this rule are listed separately. Where necessary, adjectives are denoted by the abbreviation *adj*.

- A** .....
- Abend** (m) evening  
**Abendessen** (nt) dinner, supper  
**aber** but  
**Abfahrt** (f) departure  
**Abfall** (m) trash, garbage  
**Abfertigungsschalter** (m) check-in (desk)  
**Abflug** (m) departures, take-off; **Abflughalle** (f) departure lounge  
**Abführmittel** (nt) laxative  
**Absatz** (m) heel (shoe); sales (figures)  
**absichtlich** deliberately  
**Abteil** (nt) compartment  
**Abteilung** (f) department  
**acht** eight  
**achtzehn** eighteen  
**achtzig** eighty  
**Adapter** (m) adapter  
**Adresse** (f) address  
**AIDS** AIDS  
**Aktentasche** (f) briefcase  
**Alkohol** (m) alcohol  
**alle(s)** all, every; **alle Straßen** all the streets; **das ist alles** that's all; **alles** everything  
**allein** alone  
**allergisch** allergic  
**alt** old; **wie alt sind Sie?** how old are you?  
**am** at, next to; **am Bahnhof** at the station; **am Fenster** next to the window  
**Amerika** America  
**Amerikaner(in)** (m/f) American (person)  
**amerikanisch** American (adj)  
**Ampel** (f) traffic lights  
**Ananas** (f) pineapple  
**andere** another (different); **der/die/das andere ...** the other ...;  
**ein anderes Zimmer** another room; **das ist etwas anderes!** that's different!;  
**etwas anderes** something else;  
**jemand anders** someone else;  
**wanders** somewhere else;  
**ein andermal** another time  
**Anfang** (m) start  
**anfangen** to start  
**Anfänger** (m) beginner  
**Angeln** (nt) fishing;  
**Angeln gehen** to go fishing  
**angenehm** nice, pleasant  
**anhalten** to stop  
**Anhänger** (m) trailer  
**ankommen** to arrive  
**Ankunft** (f) arrivals  
**Anrufbeantworter** (m) answering machine  
**anrufen** to call (phone)  
**ansehen** to watch  
**anstehen** to wait in line  
**Antiquitätengeschäft** (nt) antique shop  
**Antiseptikum** (nt) antiseptic  
**Antragsformular** (nt) application form  
**Anzug** (m) suit  
**Aperitif** (m) aperitif  
**Apfel** (m) apple  
**Apotheke** (f) pharmacy  
**Appetit** (m) appetite  
**Aprikose** (f) apricot  
**Arbeit** (f) job, work  
**arbeiten** to work  
**Arbeitsfläche** (f) countertop  
**arm** poor (not rich)  
**Arm** (m) arm  
**Armband** (nt) bracelet  
**Armbanduhr** (f) watch  
**Ärmel** (m) sleeve  
**Arzt** (m) doctor  
**Aschenbecher** (m) ashtray  
**Asthma** (nt) asthma  
**atmen** to breathe  
**attraktiv** attractive  
**auch** too (also)  
**auf ... on/at/in ...;**  
**auf der Post** at the post office;  
**auf Englisch** in English  
**Aufbewahrungslösung** (f) soaking solution (for contact lenses)  
**aufgeben** to mail  
**aufstehen** to get up (rise)  
**Auf Wiedersehen** goodbye  
**Auge** (nt) eye; **die Augen** eyes  
**Augenarzt/Augenärztin** (m/f) optician  
**Augenbraue** (nt) eyebrow  
**August** August  
**aus** out  
**Ausflug** (m) excursion  
**Ausgang** (m) exit  
**ausgezeichnet** excellent  
**Ausländer(in)** foreigner  
**Auspuff** (m) exhaust  
**ausruhen: sich ausruhen** to rest  
**Aussage** (f) statement  
**außerhalb** outside  
**aussteigen** to get off (bus, etc.)  
**Ausstellung** (f) exhibition  
**Auster** (f) oyster  
**Australien** Australia  
**Australier(in)** (m/f) Australian (person)  
**australisch** Australian (adj)  
**Ausweis** (m) passport  
**Auszubildende** (m/f) trainee  
**Auto** (nt) car  
**Autobahn** (f) expressway  
**automatisch** automatic
- B** .....
- Baby** (nt) baby  
**Bach** (m) stream  
**backen** to bake  
**Bäcker** (m) baker  
**Bäckerei** (f) bakery  
**Backofen** (m) oven  
**Bad** (nt) bath; **ein Bad nehmen** to take a bath  
**Badeanzug** (m) swimsuit  
**Badehose** (f) swimming trunks  
**Badewanne** (f) bathtub  
**Badezimmer** (nt) bathroom

- Bahn** (f) *railroad*  
**Bahnhof** (m) *station*  
**Bahnsteig** (m) *platform*  
**Balkon** (m) *balcony*  
**Ball** (m) *ball*  
**Ballett** (nt) *ballet*  
**Banane** (f) *banana*  
**Band** (f) *band (music)*  
**Bank** (f) *bank*  
**Banknoten** (f pl) *(bank)notes*  
**Bar** (f) *bar (drinks)*  
**Bargeld** (nt) *cash; bar bezahlen*  
*to pay cash*  
**Bart** (m) *beard*  
**Batterie** (f) *battery*  
**Bauarbeiter(in)** *builder*  
**Bauer** (m) *farmer*  
**Bauernhof** (m) *farm*  
**Baum** (m) *tree*  
**Baumwolle** (f) *cotton*  
**Bayern** *Bavaria*  
**Becken** (nt) *basin (sink)*  
**bedeutet: was bedeutet das?**  
*what does this mean?*  
**behindert** *disabled*  
**bei Ihnen** *at your place*  
**beide** *both; wir beide*  
*both of us*  
**beige** *beige*  
**Bein** (nt) *leg; Beinbruch* (m)  
*broken leg*  
**Beispiel** (nt) *example; zum*  
*Beispiel* *for example*  
**beißen** *to bite*  
**Belag** (m) *filling (in sandwich)*  
**Belgien** *Belgium*  
**Belgier(in)** (m/f)  
*Belgian (person)*  
**belgisch** *Belgian (adj)*  
**Belichtungsmesser** (m)  
*light meter*  
**Benzin** (nt) *gasoline*  
**Berater(in)** *consultant*  
**Berg** (m) *hill, mountain*  
**Bericht** (m) *report*  
**Berliner** (m) *doughnut*  
**beschäftigt** *busy (occupied)*  
**Bescheinigung** (f) *certificate*  
**besetzt** *engaged (occupied)*  
**Besichtigungen** (f) *sightseeing*  
*especially*  
**Besprechung** (f) *meeting*  
**besser** *better*  
**Basteln** (nt) *home improvement*  
**besten** *best*  
**bestreiten** *to deny*  
**Besuch** (m) *visit*  
**besuchen** *to visit*  
**Besucher(in)** (m/f) *visitor*  
**Besuchszeit** (f) *visiting hours*  
**betrunken** *drunk*  
**Bett** (nt) *bed*  
**Bettlaken** (nt) *sheet*  
**Bettwäsche** (f) *bed linen*  
**bewegen** *to move*  
**bezahlen** *to pay*  
**Bezahlung** (f) *payment*  
**BH** (m) *bra*  
**Bibliothek** (f) *library*  
**Bier** (nt) *beer*  
**Bikini** (m) *bikini*  
**Bildschirm** (m) *screen, monitor*  
**billig** *cheap*  
**Biochemie** (f) *biochemistry*  
**bin: ich bin** *I am*  
**Birne** (f) *pear*  
**bis** *until; bis Freitag*  
*by Friday; bis Morgen*  
*see you tomorrow; bis bald*  
*see you soon*  
**Biss** (m) *bite (by dog, etc.)*  
**bißchen** *a little; es ist*  
*ein bisschen zu groß*  
*it's a little big; nur ein*  
*bisschen* *just a little*  
**bist: du bist** *you are (informal)*  
**bitte** *please; wie bitte?* *pardon?*  
**bitter** *bitter*  
**Blase** (f) *blister*  
**blass** *faint (unclear), pale*  
**Blatt** (nt) *leaf*  
**blau** *blue*  
**blaue Fleck** (m) *bruise*  
**bleichen** *to bleach (hair)*  
**Bleichmittel** (nt) *bleach*  
**bleifrei** *unleaded*  
**Bleistift** (m) *pencil*  
**Bleistiftspitzer** (m)  
*pencil sharpener*  
**Blick** (m) *view*  
**blind** *blind (cannot see)*  
**Blinker** (m) *turn signal*  
**Blitz** (m) *flash (camera)*  
**blond** *blond (adj)*  
**Blume** (f) *flower*  
**Blumenbeet** (nt) *flowerbed*  
**Blumenkasten** (m)  
*window box*  
**Blumenkohl** (m) *cauliflower*  
**Blumenladen** (m) *florist*  
**Blumenstecken** (nt) *flower-*  
*arranging*  
**Bluse** (f) *blouse*  
**Blut** (nt) *blood*  
**blutig** *rare (steak)*  
**Blutprobe** (f) *blood test*  
**Boden** (m) *bottom, floor, ground;*  
*Bodenplane* (f) *groundsheet*  
**Bohnen** (f pl) *beans*  
**Boiler** (m) *boiler*  
**Bonbon** (m) *candy*  
**Boot** (nt) *boat (small)*  
**Bordkarte** (f) *boarding pass*  
**Botschaft** (f) *embassy*  
**Boxen** (nt) *boxing*  
**braten** *fry*  
**Bratpfanne** (f) *frying pan*  
**brauchen** *to need; ich*  
*brauche ... I need ...*  
**braun** *brown; braun werden*  
*to get a suntan*  
**braungebrannt** *suntanned*  
**breit** *wide*  
**Breitlauch** (nt) *leeks*  
**Bremse** (f) *brake*  
**bremsen** *to brake*  
**brennen** *to burn*  
**Bridge** (nt) *bridge (game)*  
**Brief** (m) *letter (mail)*  
**Brieffreund(in)** (m/f) *penfriend*  
**Briefkasten** (m) *mailbox.*  
*letterbox*  
**Briefmarke** (f) *stamp*  
**Brieftasche** (f) *wallet*  
**Briefträger(in)** (m/f) *mail carrier*  
**Briefumschlag** (m) *envelope*  
**Brille** (f) *glasses*  
**britisch** *British*  
**Brombeere** (f) *blackberry*  
**Brosche** (f) *brooch*  
**Broschüre** (f) *brochure, leaflet*  
**Brot** (nt) *bread*  
**Brötchen** (nt) *bread roll*  
**Brücke** (f) *bridge*  
**Bruder** (m) *brother*  
**Brunnen** (m) *fountain*  
**Brüssel** *Brussels*  
**Brust** (f) *chest (part of body)*  
**Buch** (nt) *book*  
**buchen** *to book*  
**Bücherei** (f) *library*  
**Buchhalter(in)** (m/f) *accountant*  
**Buchhandlung** (f) *bookshop*  
**Buchstabe** (m) *letter (alphabet)*  
**Budget** (nt) *budget*  
**Bügeleisen** (nt) *iron (for clothes)*  
**bügeln** *to iron*  
**Burg** (f) *castle*  
**Bürgersteig** (m) *pavement*  
**Büro** (nt) *office*  
**Bürste** (f) *brush*  
**bürsten** *to brush (hair)*  
**Bus** (m) *bus*  
**Busbahnhof** (m) *bus station*  
**Büstenhalter** (m) *bra*  
**Butter** (f) *butter*  
**Butterbrot** (nt) *sandwich*

## C

- Café** (nt) *café*  
**Campinggas** (nt) *camping gas*  
**Campingplatz** (m) *campground*

**Campingplatzverwaltung** (f)  
campground office  
**Chips** (f) chips  
**Compact-Disc** (f) CD  
**Computer** (m) computer  
**Computerspiele** (nt pl)  
computer games  
**Couch** (f) sofa  
**Crème** (f) cream (lotion)  
**Curry** (nt) curry

## D

.....  
**da** there  
**Dach** (nt) roof  
**Dachboden** (m) attic  
**Dachrinne** (f) gutter  
**Dame** (f) lady, woman  
**Damenbinden** (f pl)  
sanitary napkins  
**Damentoilette** (f) ladies' room  
**Dampfer** (m) steamer (boat)  
**Dampfkochtopf** (m)  
steamer (cooking)  
**Däne** *Dane* (man)  
**Dänemark** *Denmark*  
**Dänin** *Dane* (woman)  
**dänisch** *Danish*  
**danke** to thank;  
danke schön thank you  
**dann** then  
**das** the (nt);  
**das ist Herr ...** this is Mr ...  
**Dauerwelle** (f) perm  
**Decke** (f) blanket; ceiling  
**dein(e)** your (sing, informal)  
**Delegierte(r)** delegate  
**denken** to think  
**Denkmal** (nt) monument  
**Deodorant** (nt) deodorant  
**der** the (masculine)  
**deutsch** *German* (adj); **Deutsch**  
*German* (language)  
**Deutsche** (m/f) *German* (person)  
**Deutschland** *Germany*  
**Dezember** *December*  
**Diabetiker(in)** *diabetic*  
**Diamant** (m) *diamond* (gem)  
**dick** fat (adj); person; thick  
die the (feminine and plural)  
**Dieb** (m) thief  
**Diebstahl** (m) robbery  
**Dienstag** *Tuesday*  
**diese: diese Frau**  
that/this woman  
**Diesel** (m) *diesel*  
**dieser: dieser Mann**  
that/this man  
**Dirigent** (m) conductor  
(orchestra)

**Dokument** (nt) *document*  
**Dollar** (m) *dollar*  
**dolmetschen** to interpret  
**Dolmetscher(in)** (m/f)  
interpreter  
**Dom** (m) *cathedral*  
**Donau: die Donau** *Danube*  
**Donnerstag** *Thursday*  
**Doppelzimmer** (nt)  
double room  
**Dorf** (nt) *village*  
**dort drüben** over there  
**Dose** (f) can **Dosenöffner** (m)  
can opener  
**Drahtseilbahn** (f) *cable car*  
**Drehstuhl** (m) *swivel chair*  
**drei** three  
**dreihundert** three hundred  
**Dreißig** thirty  
**dreizehn** thirteen  
**dringend** urgent  
**dritter** third  
**drücken** to push  
**Drucker** (m) printer  
**du** you (singular informal)  
**dunkel** dark  
**dünn** thin  
**durch** through  
**Durchfall** (m) *diarrhea*  
**durchgebraten** well done (meat)  
**Durst** (m) thirst; **ich habe Durst**  
*I'm thirsty*  
**durstig** thirsty  
**Dusche** (f) shower  
**Duschgel** (nt) shower gel

## E

.....  
**Ebbe** (f) low tide  
**Ecke** (f) corner  
**Ehefrau** (f) wife  
**Ehemann** (m) husband  
**ehrlich** honest  
**Ei** (nt) egg  
**Eile: ich bin in Eile**  
*I'm in a hurry*  
**Eimer** (m) bucket  
**Einbrecher** (m) burglar  
**einchecken** to check in  
**einer von beiden** either of them  
**einfach** simple; **einfache**  
**Fahrkarte** (f) one-way ticket  
**Einfahrt** (f) driveway  
**Eingang** (m) entrance  
**Einkäufe** (f) shopping  
(items bought)  
**Einkaufen** (nt) shopping (activity);  
**einkaufen gehen**  
to go shopping  
**Einladung** (f) invitation  
**einlösen** to cash

**eins** one (number); **ein Bier/eine Wurst** one beer/one sausage  
**Einschreiben** (nt) registered mail  
**einsteigen** to get on (bus, etc.)  
**Eintrittskarte** (f) admission ticket  
**Eintrittspreis** (m) admission charge  
**Einwegwindeln** (f pl) disposable diapers  
**Einzelzimmer** (nt) single room  
**einzig** single (one)  
**Eis** (nt) ice, ice cream;  
**Eiscreme** (f) ice cream;  
**Eis am Stiel** (nt) ice pop  
**Eisen** (nt) iron (metal)  
**Eisenwarenhändler** (m)  
hardware store  
**elastisch** elastic  
**Elektriker(in)** (m/f) electrician  
**elektrisch** electric  
**elf** eleven  
**Ellbogen** (m) elbow  
**Eltern** (m pl) parents  
**Empfang** (m) reception  
**Empfangsperson** (m/f)  
receptionist  
**Ende** (nt) end  
**endlich!** at last!  
**eng** narrow, tight  
**England** *England*  
**Engländer(in)** (m/f)  
*Englishman(woman)*  
**englisch** *English* (adj); **Englisch**  
*English* (language)  
**Enkel** (m) grandson  
**Enkelin** (f) granddaughter  
**Entschuldigung!** excuse me!, sorry!  
**entweder ... oder ...**  
either ... or ...  
**entwickeln** to develop (film)  
**Entzündung** (f) infection  
**Epilektiker(in)** (m/f) epileptic  
**er** he  
**Erbsen** (f pl) peas  
**Erdbeeren** (f pl) strawberries  
**Erde** (f) soil  
**Erdgeschoss** (nt) ground floor  
**Erdnüsse** (f pl) peanuts  
**Erfrischungen** (f pl) refreshments  
**erinnern: sich erinnern**  
to remember; **ich erinnere mich nicht** I don't remember  
**Erkältung** (f) cold (illness); **ich bin erkältet** I have a cold  
**Ermäßigungen** (f) discounts  
**ernst** serious  
**Ersatzteile** (nt pl) spares  
**Erste Hilfe** (f) first aid  
**erster** first; **erster Klasse** first class; **erste Stock** (m) first floor

es it

Essen (nt) food, meal;

essen to eat

Essig (m) vinegar

Etikett (nt) label

etwa: etwa 16 about 16

etwas something

## F

Faden (m) string (cord)

Fahne (f) flag

Fähre (f) ferry

fahren to drive, go (travel)

Fahrer(in) (m/f) driver

Fahrgast (m) passenger

Fahrplan (m) schedule (train, bus)

Fahrpreis (m) fare

Fahrrad (nt) bicycle

Fahrstuhl (m) elevator

(in building)

Fahrt (f) trip, journey

Fahrzeug (nt) vehicle

fair fair (just)

falsch wrong

Familie (f) family

Fan (m) fan (enthusiast)

fantastisch fantastic

Farbe (f) color, paint

Farbfilm (m) color film

fast almost

faul lazy

Februar February

Feder (f) spring (mechanical)

Fehler (m) mistake

Feiertag (m) public holiday

Feige (f) fig

Feinkostgeschäft (nt)

delicatessen

Feld (nt) field

Fenster (nt) window

Fensterladen (m) shutter

Ferien (f) holiday

Fernsehen (nt) television;

fernsehen to watch television

Ferse (f) heel (foot)

fertig ready; Fertiggerichte

(nt pl) prepared meals

festmachen to tie

Fett (nt) fat

feucht damp

Feuer (nt) fire

Feuerlöscher (m)

fire extinguisher

Feuerwerk (nt) fireworks

Feuerzeug (nt) lighter

Feuerzeugbenzin (nt)

lighter fuel

Fieber (nt) temperature, fever

Film (m) film, movie

Filter (m) filter

Filterpapier (nt) filter papers

Finger (m) finger

Fisch (m) fish

Fischgeschäft (nt) fishmonger

flach flat (level)

Flasche (f) bottle

Flaschenöffner (m)

bottle opener

Fleisch (nt) meat

Fliege (f) fly (insect)

fliegen to fly

Floh (m) flea

Floh spray (nt) flea spray

Flöte (f) flute

Flug (m) flight

Flugnummer (f)

flight number

Flügel (m) wing

Flughafen (m) airport

Flughafenbus (m) airport bus

Fluglinie (f) airline

Flugsteig (m) gate

(at airport)

Flugzeug (nt) aircraft

Fluss (m) river

Flut (f) high tide

Flyer (m) leaflet, flyer

Fön (m) hair dryer

Forschungen (f) research

Foto (nt) photograph

Fotograf (m) photographer

fotografieren to photograph

Fotokopierer (m) photocopier

Frage (f) question

Frankreich France

Franzose (m) Frenchman

Französin (f) Frenchwoman

französisch French

Frau Mrs.

Frau Ms.

Frau (f) woman, wife

Fräulein Miss;

Fräulein! waitress!

frei free

Freitag Friday

Fremdenverkehrsbüro (nt)

tourist office

Freund(in) (m/f) friend

freundlich friendly

freut mich pleased to meet you

Friedhof (m) cemetery

Friseur (m) hairdresser's

Friseursalon (m)

ladies' hairdresser's

Fritten (m pl) french fries

froh glad

Frost (m) frost;

Frucht (f) fruit

Fruchtsaft (m) fruit juice

früh early

Frühling (m) spring (season)

Frühstück (nt) breakfast

fühlen to feel (touch)

Führer (m) guide

Führerschein (m)

driver's license

Führung (f) guided tour

Füllung (f) filling (in tooth, cake)

Fundbüro (nt) lost property

fünf five

fünfehn fifteen

fünfzig fifty

funktionieren to work

(machine, etc.)

für for; für mich for me;

wofür? what for?;

für eine Woche for a week

furchtbar awful

Fuß (m) foot; Füße (m pl) feet

Fußball (m) soccer

Fußboden (m) floor (ground)

Fußgänger (m) pedestrian;

Fußgängerzone

(f) pedestrian zone

## G

Gabel (f) fork

Gang (m) aisle

ganz quite (fully)

Garage (f) garage (for parking)

Garantie (f) guarantee

garantieren to guarantee

Garten (m) garden

Gartenarbeit (f) gardening

Gartencenter (nt) garden center

Gärtner(in) (m/f) gardener

Gaspedal (nt) accelerator

Gast (m) guest

Gastgeber(in) (m/f) host

Gasthaus (nt) inn

Gebäck (nt) pastry

Gebäude (nt) building

geben to give

Gebiet (nt) field of work

Gebiss (m) dentures,

false teeth

geboren to be born:

ich bin in ... geboren

I was born in ...

gebraten fried

Gebrauch (m) use

gebrauchen to use

gebrochen broken (arm, etc.)

Geburtstag (m) birthday;

Herzlichen Glückwunsch!

happy birthday!

Geburtstagsgeschenk (nt)

birthday present

Geburtstagskarte (f)

birthday card

gedämpft steamed

gefährlich *dangerous*  
 Geflügel (nt) *poultry*  
 Gefrierschrank (m) *freezer*  
 gegen *against*  
 gegenüber *opposite*  
 gegrillt *grilled*  
 Geheimzahl (f) *PIN (number)*  
 gehen *to go, walk;*  
 gehen Sie weg! *go away!*  
 Geige (f) *violin*  
 Geisteswissenschaften (f pl)  
*humanities*  
 Geistliche (m/f) *priest*  
 gekocht *boiled*  
 gekochte Schinken (m) *ham*  
 Gel (nt) *gel (hair)*  
 gelb *yellow*  
 Geld (nt) *money*  
 Geldautomat (m) *ATM*  
 Geldschein (m) *banknote*  
 gelegentlich *occasionally*  
 Gemüse (nt) *vegetable*  
 Genehmigung (f) *license*  
 genug *enough*  
 Gepäck (nt) *luggage*  
 Gepäckablage (f) *luggage rack*  
 Gepäckausgabe (f)  
*baggage claim*  
 Gepäckschließfach (nt)  
*left luggage locker*  
 gerade *just; es ist gerade*  
*angekommen it's just arrived*  
 gerecht *fair (just)*  
 gern: ich schwimme gern  
*I like swimming*  
 geröstet *roasted*  
 Geruch (m) *smell*  
 Geschäft (nt) *business, shop*  
 Geschäftsführer (m) *manager*  
 Geschenk (nt) *gift;*  
 Geschenkpapier (nt)  
*wrapping paper*  
 Geschichte (f) *history*  
 geschieden *divorced*  
 Geschirrspülmaschine (f)  
*dishwasher*  
 Geschirrtuch (nt) *tea towel*  
 geschlossen *closed*  
 Geschmack (m) *flavor*  
 Geschwindigkeit (f) *speed*  
 Gesicht (nt) *face*  
 Gespräch (nt) *talk*  
 gestern *yesterday*  
 Getränk (nt) *drink*  
 getrennt *separate(ly);*  
 wir leben getrennt  
*we are separated*  
 Getriebe (nt) *gearbox*  
 Gewehr (nt) *gun (rifle)*  
 Gewinn (m) *profits*  
 Gewitter (nt) *thunderstorm*

gewöhnlich *ordinary,*  
*usual, usually*  
 gibt: es gibt ... *there is/are ...;*  
 gibt es ...? *is/are there ...?*  
 Gift (nt) *poison*  
 Gitarre (f) *guitar*  
 Glas (nt) *glass*  
 gratis *free (no charge)*  
 glaube: ich glaube ja  
*I think so*  
 gleiche: gleiche Kleid  
*the same dress*  
 Gleis (nt) *platform*  
 Glocke (f) *bell (church)*  
 Glück (nt) *luck; viel Glück!*  
*good luck!*  
 glücklich *happy*  
 Glühbirne (f) *light bulb*  
 Gold (nt) *gold*  
 Grafiker(in) (m/f) *designer*  
 Gras (nt) *grass*  
 grau *gray*  
 grell *loud (color)*  
 Grenze (f) *border*  
 Grill (m) *barbecue, grill*  
 groß *big, large, tall;*  
 größer als *bigger than*  
 Großbritannien *Great Britain*  
 Großeltern (m pl) *grandparents*  
 Großmutter (f) *grandmother*  
 Großstadt (f) *city*  
 Großvater (m) *grandfather*  
 grün *green*  
 Grund (m) *bottom (sea)*  
 Gruppe (f) *party (group)*  
 Gummi (m) *rubber (material)*  
 Gummiband (nt) *elastic band*  
 Gummistiefel (f) *wellingtons*  
 Gurke (f) *cucumber*  
 Gürtel (m) *belt*  
 gut *good; mir ist nicht gut*  
*I don't feel well*  
 gut aussehend *handsome*  
 Guten Abend *good night*  
 guten Tag *hello, good day*

## H

Haar (nt) *hair*  
 Haarschnitt (m) *haircut*  
 Haarspray (nt) *hair spray*  
 Haarpflege (f) *conditioner*  
 haben *have; ich habe ...*  
*I have ...; haben Sie ...?*  
*do you have ...?*  
 Hafen (m) *harbor, port*  
 Hahn (m) *tap*  
 Hähnchen (nt) *chicken (cooked)*  
 halb *half; eine halbe Stunde*  
*half an hour*  
 Halbbruder (m) *half-brother*

Halbpension *half-board*  
 Halbschwester (f) *half-sister*  
 hallo *hello (on phone); hi*  
 Hals (m) *neck*  
 Halsband (nt) *collar*  
 Halskette (f) *necklace*  
 Halstabletten (f pl)  
*throat lozenges*  
 halt! *stop!*  
 Haltestelle (f) *stop (bus stop)*  
 Hamburger (m) *hamburger*  
 Hammer (m) *hammer*  
 Hamster (m) *hamster*  
 Hand (f) *hand*  
 Handbremse (f) *handbrake*  
 Händedruck (m) *handshake*  
 Handelsmesse (f) *trade fair*  
 Handgelenk (nt) *wrist*  
 Handgepäck (nt) *carry-on*  
*luggage*  
 Handschuhe (f) *gloves*  
 Handtasche (f) *handbag*  
 Handtuch (nt) *towel*  
 Handy (nt) *cell phone*  
 hart *hard*  
 hässlich *ugly*  
 Hauptgericht (nt) *main course*  
 Hauptstraße (f) *main road*  
 Haus (nt) *house;*  
 zu Hause *at home*  
 Haushaltswaren (f pl) *household*  
*products*  
 Hausmeister(in) *caretaker*  
 Haustiere (nt pl) *pets*  
 Hautreiniger (m) *skin cleanser*  
 Hecke (f) *hedge*  
 Hefter (m) *stapler*  
 Heftzwecke (f) *thumbtack*  
 heiß *hot; mir ist heiß*  
*I feel hot*  
 heißen *to be called;*  
 wie heißt das?  
*what's it called?;*  
 wie heißen Sie?  
*what's your name?*  
 Heißwassergerät (nt)  
*water heater*  
 Heizgerät (nt) *heater*  
 Heizkörper (m) *radiator*  
 Heizung (f) *heating*  
 helfen *to help*  
 hell *light (not dark)*  
 Hemd (nt) *shirt*  
 herauskommen *to get out*  
 Herd (m) *stove*  
 hereinkommen *to come in*  
 Hering (m) *tent peg*  
 Herr *Mr.*  
 Herrenfriseur (m) *barber's*  
 Herrentoilette (f) *men's room*  
 herunter *down*



**Herz** (nt) heart, hearts (cards);  
**ich bin herzkrank** I have  
 a heart condition  
**herzlichen Glückwunsch!**  
 congratulations!  
**Heuschnupfen** (m) hay fever  
**heute** today; **heute**  
**abend** tonight  
**Hilfe** (f) help  
**hilfreich** useful  
**Himbeeren** (f pl) raspberries  
**Himmel** (m) sky  
**hinter ...** behind ...  
**HIV positiv** HIV-positive  
**Hobby** (nt) hobby  
**hoch** high  
**Hochzeit** (f) wedding  
**Hochzeitsreise** (f) honeymoon  
**Höhle** (f) cave  
**holen** to get (fetch)  
**Holland** Holland  
**Holländer(in)** (m/f)  
 Dutchman(woman)  
**holländisch** Dutch (adj)  
**Holz** (nt) wood (material)  
**Homöopathie** (f) homeopathy  
**Honig** (m) honey  
**hören** hear  
**Hörgerät** (nt) hearing aid  
**Horn** (nt) horn (animal)  
**Hose** (f) pants  
**Hosenträger** (nt pl)  
 suspenders  
**hübsch** nice (attractive)  
**Huhn** (nt) chicken (animal)  
**Hummer** (m) lobster  
**Hund** (m) dog  
**hundert** hundred  
**Hunger** (m) hunger; **ich habe**  
**Hunger** I'm hungry  
**Hupe** (f) horn (car)  
**husten** to cough;  
**Husten** (m) cough  
**Hut** (m) hat

**I** .....

**ich I; ich bin** I am  
**ihr(e)** their/her; your  
 (singular formal)  
**im: im Hotel** in the hotel  
**Imbiss** (m) snack  
**immer** always  
**Impfung** (f) vaccination  
**in in; in der Nacht** at night  
**Infektion** (f) infection  
**Information** (f) information  
**Ingwer** (m) ginger (spice)  
**Insekt** (nt) insect  
**Insektenmittel** (nt) insect  
 repellent

**Insel** (f) island  
**interessant** interesting  
**Internet** (nt) internet  
**intravenöse Infusion** (f)  
 intravenous drip  
**Ire** (m) Irishman  
**irgendwie** somehow  
**irgendwo** somewhere  
**Irin** (f) Irishwoman  
**irisch** Irish  
**Irland** Ireland  
**ist is; er/sie/es ist ...**  
 he/she/it is ...  
**Italien** Italy  
**Italiener(in)** (m/f) Italian  
**italienisch** Italian (adj)

**J** .....

**ja** yes  
**Jacke** (f) jacket  
**Jahr** (nt) year  
**Jahrmarkt** (m) fair, amusement  
 park  
**Jalousie** (f) blinds  
**Januar** January  
**Jazz** (m) jazz  
**Jeans** (f) jeans  
**jeder** each, every, everyone  
**jemand** somebody  
**jetzt** now  
**joggen** to jog; **joggen gehen**  
 to go for a jog  
**Jogurt** (m) yogurt  
**Jucken** (nt) itch  
**Jugendherberge** (f)  
 youth hostel  
**Juli** July  
**Junge** (m) boy  
**Juni** June  
**Juweliergeschäft** (nt) jeweler

**K** .....

**Kabelfernsehen** (nt)  
 cable TV  
**Kacheln** (f pl) tiles  
**Kaffee** (m) coffee;  
**Kaffee ohne Milch**  
 black coffee  
**Käfig** (m) cage  
**Kai** (m) quay  
**Kalbfleisch** (nt) veal  
**kalt** cold (adj);  
**mir ist kalt** I am cold  
**Kamera** (f) camera  
**Kamm** (m) comb  
**Kanada** Canada  
**Kanadier(in)** (m/f)  
 Canadian (person)  
**kanadisch** Canadian (adj)

**Kanal** (m) canal (m)  
 English Channel  
**Kanaltunnel** (m)  
 Channel Tunnel  
**Kaninchen** (nt) rabbit  
**kann ich ... haben?**  
 can I have ...?  
**Kante** (f) side (edge)  
**Kanu** (nt) canoe  
**kaputt** broken (machine, etc.)  
**Karo** diamonds (cards)  
**Karotte** (f) carrot  
**Karte** (f) card, ticket;  
**Kartenspiel** (nt) deck of cards  
**Kartoffel** (f) potato  
**Käse** (m) cheese  
**Kasse** (f) box office, checkout  
**Kassette** (f) cassette  
**Kassettenrecorder** (m)  
 cassette player  
**Kassierer(in)** cashier  
**Kater** (m) hangover  
**Katze** (f) cat  
**kaufen** to buy  
**Kaufhaus** (nt)  
 department store  
**Kaugummi** (m) chewing gum  
**Kaution** (f) deposit  
**Kehle** (f) throat  
**kehren** to sweep  
**Keilriemen** (m) fan belt  
**kein: ich habe kein Geld** I don't  
 have any money  
**keine Ursache** you're welcome  
**Keller** (m) cellar  
**Kellnerin** (f) waitress  
**kennen** to know (to be  
 acquainted with)  
**Kerze** (f) candle  
**Kilo** (nt) kilo  
**Kilometer** (m) kilometer  
**Kirmes** (f) fair, amusement park  
**Kind** (nt) child  
**Kinder** children  
**Kinderbett** (nt) crib  
**Kindersitz** (m) car seat  
**Kinderstation** (f) children's ward  
**Kinderwagen** (m) baby carriage  
**Kino** (nt) movie theater  
**Kirche** (f) church  
**Kirsche** (f) cherry  
**Kissen** (nt) cushion  
**klar** clear  
**Klasse** (f) class  
**klassische Musik** (f)  
 classical music  
**Klavier** (nt) piano  
**Kleid** (nt) dress  
**Kleider** (nt pl) clothes  
**Kleiderbügel** (m) coat hanger  
**Kleiderschrank** (m) wardrobe

klein little, small  
 Kleingeld (nt) change (money)  
 kleinschneiden to chop, cut  
 Klempner(in) (m/f) plumber  
 Klimaanlage (f) air conditioning  
 Klingel (f) (door) bell  
 Klinke (f) handle (door)  
 Klub (m) club  
 klug clever  
 Knie (nt) knee  
 Knoblauch (m) garlic  
 Knöchel (m) ankle  
 Knochen (m) bone  
 Knopf (m) button  
 Koch (m) cook  
 kochen to boil, cook  
 Kochtopf (m) saucepan  
 Köder (m) bait  
 Koffer (m) suitcase;  
 Kofferkuli (m) luggage cart  
 Kofferraum (m) trunk (car)  
 Kohl (m) cabbage  
 Kolben (m) piston  
 Köln Cologne  
 komisch funny  
 kommen to come; ich komme  
 aus ... I come from ...;  
 kommen Sie her! come here!  
 Kommode (f) chest of drawers  
 kompliziert complicated  
 Konditorei (f) bakery  
 Kondom (nt) condom  
 Konferenz (f) conference  
 Konferenzzimmer (nt)  
 conference room  
 Konfitüre (f) jam  
 können Sie ...? can you ...?  
 Konsulat (nt) consulate  
 Kontaktlinsen (f) contact lenses  
 Konzert (nt) concert  
 Kopf (m) head  
 Kopfhörer (m) headphones  
 Kopfkissen (nt) pillow  
 Kopfsalat (m) lettuce  
 Kopfschmerzen (f) headache  
 Kopftuch (nt) headscarf  
 Korb (m) basket  
 Korke (m) cork  
 Korkenzieher (m) corkscrew  
 Körper (m) body  
 Korridor (m) corridor  
 Kosmetika (f) cosmetics  
 kosten to cost; was kostet das?  
 what does it cost?  
 kostenlos free (no charge)  
 Kostenvoranschlag (m) estimate  
 Kotelett (nt) chop (food)  
 Krabbe (f) crab  
 Krabben (f pl) shrimp  
 Kragen (m) collar  
 Krampf (m) cramp

krank ill, sick  
 Krankenhaus (nt) hospital  
 Krankenpfleger (m) nurse (man)  
 Krankenschwester (f)  
 nurse (woman)  
 Krankenwagen (m) ambulance  
 Krawatte (f) tie  
 Krebs (m) crayfish  
 Kreditkarte (f) credit card  
 Kreuz clubs (cards)  
 Kreuzfahrt (f) cruise  
 Krieg (m) war  
 Krücken (f pl) crutches  
 Küche (f) kitchen  
 Kuchen (m) cake  
 kühl cool  
 Kühler (m) radiator (car)  
 Kühlschrank (m) refrigerator  
 Kunde (m) client  
 Kunst (f) art  
 Kunstgalerie (f) art gallery  
 Künstler(in) (m/f) artist  
 Kupplung (f) clutch  
 Kurort (m) spa  
 kurz short  
 Kusine (f) cousin (female)

## L

.....  
 Lächeln (nt) smile;  
 lächeln to smile  
 lachen to laugh  
 Lachs (m) salmon  
 Ladegerät (nt) charger  
 Lagerfeuer (nt) campfire  
 Lamm (nt) lamb (animal)  
 Lammfleisch (nt) lamb (meat)  
 Lampe (f) lamp  
 Lampenschirm (m) lampshade  
 Land (nt) country, land  
 landen to land  
 Landkarte (f) map (of country)  
 lang long  
 Länge (f) length  
 langsam slow  
 langweilig boring  
 Laptop (m) laptop (computer)  
 Lastwagen (m) truck  
 laufen to run  
 Läufer (m) rug (mat)  
 laut loud, noisy  
 Leben (nt) life  
 Lebensmittelgeschäft (nt)  
 grocery store  
 Lebensmittelvergiftung (f)  
 food poisoning  
 Leber (f) liver  
 lecker nice (to eat)  
 Leder (nt) leather  
 ledig single (unmarried)  
 leer empty

Leerung (f) pickup (postal)  
 legen to put  
 Lehrer(in) teacher  
 Leiche (f) body (corpse)  
 leicht easy, light (not heavy)  
 Leid: es tut mir Leid I'm sorry  
 leihen to hire  
 Leim (m) glue  
 Leine (f) lead  
 Lenkrad (nt) steering wheel  
 lernen to learn  
 Leselampe (f) reading lamp  
 lesen to read  
 letzter last (final); letzte  
 Woche last week  
 Leute (m pl) people  
 Licht (nt) light  
 lieb dear (person)  
 Liebe (f) love  
 lieben to love; ich mag lieber ...  
 I prefer ...  
 Lied (nt) song  
 Lieferung (f) delivery  
 Liegestuhl (m) deck chair  
 Likör (m) liqueur  
 lila purple  
 Limette (f) lime (fruit)  
 Limonade (f) lemon soda  
 Lineal (nt) ruler (for drawing)  
 links left (not right);  
 linke Seite (f) left side  
 Linse (f) lens  
 Lippen-Fettstift (m) lip salve  
 Lippenstift (m) lipstick  
 Liste (f) list  
 Liter (m) liter  
 Locken (f pl) curls  
 Löffel (m) spoon  
 Lounge (f) lounge (in hotel)  
 Luft (f) air  
 Luftmatratze (f) air mattress  
 Luftpost (f) airmail  
 Lutscher (m) lollipop  
 Luxemburg Luxembourg

## M

.....  
 machen to make; macht nichts  
 it doesn't matter  
 Mädchen (nt) girl  
 Magen (m) stomach;  
 Magenschmerzen (f)  
 stomachache;  
 Magenverstimmung (f)  
 indigestion  
 Mail (f) email; Mail Adresse (f)  
 email address  
 Make-up (nt) makeup  
 Maler(in) decorator  
 Manager(in) executive  
 manchmal sometimes

**Mandarine** (f) tangerine  
**Mann** (m) man, husband  
**Manschettenknöpfe** (m pl) cufflinks  
**Mantel** (m) coat  
**Margarine** (f) margarine  
**Markt** (m) market  
**Marmelade** (f) jam  
**Marmor** (m) marble  
**März** March  
**Maskara** (nt) mascara  
**Matratze** (f) mattress  
**Mauer** (f) wall (outside)  
**Maus** (f) mouse  
**Mechaniker(in)** mechanic  
**Medikamente** (f) medication  
**Medizin** (f) medicine  
**Meer** (nt) sea; **Meeresfrüchte** (f pl) seafood, shellfish  
**Mehl** (nt) flour  
**mehr** more; **Mehrgepäck** (nt) excess baggage  
**mehrere** several  
**mein(e)** my  
**Melone** (f) melon  
**Messe** (f) mass (church)  
**Messer** (nt) knife  
**Metzgerei** (f) butcher's  
**mieten** to rent  
**Mikrowelle** (f) microwave  
**Milch** (f) milk  
**Million: eine Million** one million  
**Mineralwasser** (nt) mineral water  
**Minute** (f) minute  
**mir: es gehört mir** it's mine  
**mit** with  
**Mittag** (m) noon;  
**Mittagessen** (nt) lunch  
**Mitte** (f) center, middle;  
**in der Mitte** in the middle  
**Mitternacht** midnight  
**Mittwoch** Wednesday  
**Möbel** (f) furniture  
**Mobiltelefon** (nt) cell phone  
**möchten Sie ...?** would you like ...?  
**Mode** (f) fashion  
**Modem** (nt) modem  
**moderne Architektur** (f) modern architecture  
**möglich** possible;  
**so bald wie möglich** as soon as possible  
**Möhre** (f) carrot  
**Molkereiprodukte** (nt pl) dairy products  
**Monat** (m) month  
**Mond** (m) moon  
**Monitor** (m) monitor  
**Montag** Monday

**Moped** (nt) moped  
**Morgen** (m) morning; **am Morgen** in the morning; **morgen** tomorrow  
**Motor** (m) engine (motor)  
**Motorboot** (nt) motorboat  
**Motorhaube** (f) hood (car)  
**Motorrad** (nt) motorbike  
**Mountain-Bike** (nt) mountain bike  
**müde** tired  
**Mülleimer** (f) trashcan  
**Müllsack** (m) garbage bag  
**Mülltonne** (f) garbage can  
**München** Munich  
**Mund** (m) mouth  
**Münze** (f) coin  
**Muschel** (f) shell  
**Muscheln** (f pl) mussels  
**Museum** (nt) museum  
**Musik** (f) music;  
**Musikanlange** (f) stereo system; **Musikinstrument** (nt) musical instrument  
**Musiker(in)** musician  
**müssen** to have to (must); **ich muss ...** I must ...  
**Mutter** (f) mother; **nut** (for bolt)  
**Mütze** (f) cap (hat)

**N**.....  
**nach** after, toward; **nach England** to England  
**Nachname** (m) last name  
**Nachricht** (f) message  
**Nachrichten** news  
**nächster** next;  
**nächste Woche** next week  
**Nacht** (f) night  
**Nachthemd** (nt) nightgown  
**Nachtisch** (m) desserts  
**Nachtklub** (m) nightclub  
**Nachtportier** (m) night porter  
**Nachttisch** (m) nightstand  
**Nadel** (f) needle  
**Nagel** (m) nail (metal, finger); **Nagelfeile** (f) nailfile; **Nagellack** (m) nail polish; **Nagelzwickler** (m) nail clippers  
**nah** close, near; **nahe der Tür** near the door; **in der Nähe von London** near London  
**nähen** to sew  
**Name** (m) name  
**Nase** (f) nose  
**naß** wet  
**Nebel** (m) fog  
**neben** beside

**Neffe** (m) nephew  
**Negativ** (nt) negative (photo)  
**nehmen** take  
**nein** no (response)  
**neu** new  
**neun** nine  
**neunzehn** nineteen  
**neunzig** ninety  
**Neuseeland** New Zealand  
**Neuseeländer(in)** (m/f) New Zealander  
**nicht** not;  
**nicht so viel** not so much;  
**nicht viele** not many  
**Nichte** (f) niece  
**nichts** nothing  
**nie** never  
**Niederlande: die Niederlande** the Netherlands  
**niedrig** low  
**Niere** (f) kidney  
**nirgendwo** nowhere  
**noch ein** another one;  
**noch einen Kaffee, bitte** another cup of coffee, please  
**nochmal** again;  
**nochmal dasselbe, bitte** same again, please  
**noch nicht** not yet  
**Nockenwelle** (f) camshaft  
**Norden** (m) north  
**Nordirland** Northern Ireland  
**Nordsee: die Nordsee** North Sea  
**Notausgang** (m) emergency exit  
**Notbremse** (f) emergency brake  
**Notfall** (m) emergency  
**nötig: das ist nicht nötig** there's no need  
**Notizblock** (m) notepad  
**Notizbuch** (nt) notebook  
**notwendig** necessary  
**November** November  
**Nudeln** (f) pasta  
**Nummer** (f) number;  
**Nummernschild** (nt) license plate  
**nur** just, only  
**Nuss** (f) nut (fruit)

**O**.....  
**ob** whether  
**oben** up;  
**nach oben** upward;  
**da oben** up there  
**Ober** (m) waiter;  
**Herr Ober!** waiter!  
**Obst** (nt) fruit  
**oder** or  
**offen** open (adj)

öffentlich *public*  
 öffnen *to open*  
 Öffnungszeiten  
*opening times*  
 oft *often*  
 ohne *without*  
 ohnmächtig werden *to faint*  
 Ohr (nt) *ear*;  
 Ohren (nt pl) *ears*  
 Ohringe (m pl) *earrings*  
 okay *OK*  
 Oktober *October*  
 Öl (nt) *oil*  
 Olive (f) *olive*  
 Omelette (nt) *omelet*  
 Onkel (m) *uncle*  
 Oper (f) *opera*  
 Operation (f) *operation*  
 Operationssaal (m)  
*operating room*  
 Orange (f) *orange (fruit);*  
*orange orange (color)*  
 Orangenmarmelade (f)  
*marmalade*  
 Orangensaft (m) *orange juice*  
 Orchester (nt) *orchestra*  
 Ort (m) *place (town, etc.)*  
 Osten (m) *east*  
 Österreich *Austria*  
 Österreicher(in) (m/f)  
*Austrian (person);*  
*österreichisch*  
*Austrian (adj)*  
 Ostsee (f) *Baltic Sea*

## P

Paar (nt) *pair*  
 Packpapier (nt)  
*wrapping paper*  
 Paket (nt) *package, packet, parcel*  
 Palast (m) *palace*  
 Panne (f) *breakdown (car)*  
 Pantoffeln (m pl) *slippers*  
 Papier (nt) *paper*  
 Paprika (m) *pepper*  
*(red/green)*  
 Paraffin (nt) *kerosene*  
 Parfüm (nt) *perfume*  
 Park (m) *park*  
 parken *to park; Parken*  
*verboten no parking*  
 Parkplatz (m) *parking lot*  
 Partei (f) *party (political,*  
*celebration)*  
 Pass (m) *passport*  
 Passagier (m) *passenger*  
 passen Sie auf! *be careful!*  
 Passkontrolle (f)  
*passport control*  
 Passwort (nt) *password*

peinlich *embarrassing*  
 Penizillin (nt) *penicillin*  
 perfekt *perfect*  
 Perle (f) *pearl*  
 Petersilie (f) *parsley*  
 Pfannkuchen (m) *pancake*  
 Pfeffer (m) *pepper (spice)*  
 Pfefferminzbonbons (f)  
*peppermints*  
 Pfeife (f) *pipe (for smoking)*  
 Pfirsich (m) *peach*  
 Pflanze (f) *plant*  
 Pflaster (nt) *adhesive bandage*  
 Pforte (f) *gate (garden gate)*  
 Pfund (nt) *pound*  
*(money, weight)*  
 Picknick (nt) *picnic*  
 Pik spades (cards)  
 Pilot(in) (m/f) *pilot*  
 Pilz (m) *mushroom*  
 Pinsel (m) *paint brush*  
 Pinzette (f) *tweezers*  
 Pistole (f) *gun (pistol)*  
 Plastik (nt) *plastic*  
 Plastiktüte (f) *plastic bag*  
 Platten (m) *flat tire*  
 Platz (m) *place, square*  
*(in town)*  
 Plätzchen (nt) *cookie*  
 Pole (m) *Pole (man)*  
 Polen *Poland*  
 Polin (f) *Pole (woman)*  
 Politik (f) *politics*  
 Polizei (f) *police*  
 Polizeibericht (m)  
*police report*  
 Polizeirevier (nt)  
*police station*  
 Polizist(in) (m/f) *police officer*  
 polnisch *Polish*  
 Pommies (m pl) *french fries*  
 Popmusik (f) *pop music*  
 Porée (m) *leeks*  
 Portemonnaie (nt) *purse*  
 Portier (m) *porter (hotel)*  
 Portwein (m) *port (drink)*  
 Porzellan (nt) *china*  
 Post (f) *mail*  
 Postamt (nt) *post office*  
 Poster (nt) *poster*  
 Postkarte (f) *postcard*  
 Postleitzahl (f) *ZIP code*  
 Preis (m) *price*  
 prima! *great!*  
 privat *private*  
 pro per: **pro Nacht** *per night*  
 Problem (nt) *problem*  
 Professor(in) (m/f) *professor*  
 prost! *cheers!*  
 Prothese (f) *dentures,*  
*false teeth*

Puder (m) *powder (cosmetics),*  
*talcum powder*  
 Pullover (m) *jumper*  
 Pulver (nt) *powder*  
 Pulverkaffee (m) *instant coffee*  
 Pumpe (f) *pipe (for water)*  
 Puppe (f) *doll*  
 Putzfrau (f) *cleaner*

## Q, R

Quadrat (nt) *square (shape)*  
 Qualität (f) *quality*  
 Qualle (f) *jellyfish*  
 Quittung (f) *receipt*  
 Rad (nt) *wheel*  
 radfahren *to cycle*  
 Radiergummi (m) *eraser*  
 Radieschen (nt) *radish*  
 Radio (nt) *radio*  
 Rang (m) *circle*  
 Rasen (m) *lawn*  
 Rasenmäher (m) *lawnmower*  
 Rasiercreme (f) *shaving foam*  
 rasieren: sich rasieren  
*to shave*  
 Rasierklingen (f pl)  
*razor blades*  
 Rasierwasser (nt) *aftershave*  
 Rathaus (nt) *town hall*  
 Ratte (f) *rat*  
 Rauch (m) *smoke*  
 rauchen *to smoke*  
 Raum (m) *room (space)*  
 Rechen (m) *rake*  
 Rechner (m) *calculator*  
 Rechnung (f) *check (bill), invoice*  
 recht (gut) *fairly (good)*  
 rechts *right (direction); rechte*  
*Seite (f) right side*  
 Rechtsanwalt/  
 Rechtsan-wältin (m/f) *lawyer*  
 reden *to talk*  
 Regen (m) *rain*  
 Regenmantel (m) *raincoat*  
 Regenschirm (m) *umbrella*  
 Regierung (f) *government*  
 reich *rich*  
 reif *ripe*  
 Reifen (m) *tire*  
 Reifenpanne (f) *puncture*  
 Reinigung (f) *dry cleaner*  
 Reis (m) *rice*  
 Reise (f) *journey*  
 Reisebüro (nt) *travel agency*  
 Reiseführer (m) *guidebook*  
 Reiseleiter(in) (m/f) *tour guide*  
 Reißnagel (m) *thumbtack*  
 Reißverschluss (m) *zipper*  
 Rekord (m) *record (sports, etc.)*  
 Religion (f) *religion*

Reservierung (f) reservation  
 Rest (m) rest (remainder)  
 Restaurant (nt) restaurant  
 Rettich (m) radish  
 Rezept (nt) prescription  
 Rhabarber (m) rhubarb  
 richtig right (correct)  
 riechen to smell;  
 Das riecht gut  
 that smells good.  
 Riegel (m) bolt (on door)  
 Rindfleisch (nt) beef  
 Ring (m) ring (jewelry)  
 Rock (m) skirt; rock (music)  
 Rohr (nt) pipe (for water)  
 Rollstuhl (m) wheelchair  
 Rollstuhlfahrer (m)  
 wheelchair access  
 Rolltreppe (f) escalator  
 Roman (m) novel  
 Röntgenabteilung (f)  
 X-ray department  
 Röntgenaufnahme (f) X-ray  
 rosa pink  
 Rose (f) rose  
 Rosinen (f pl) raisins  
 rot red  
 Rubin (m) ruby (gem)  
 Rücken (m) back (body)  
 Rückfahrkarte (f)  
 round-trip ticket  
 Rücklichter (f pl) rear lights  
 Rucksack (m) backpack  
 Rückseite (f) back (not front)  
 rufen to shout  
 ruhig quiet  
 Ruinen (f pl) ruins  
 Rum (m) rum  
 rund round (circular)  
 Rundreise (f) tour

## S

sagen to say; was haben Sie  
 gesagt? what did you say?;  
 wie sagt man ...?  
 how do you say ...?  
 Sahne (f) cream (for cake, etc.)  
 Saite (f) string (guitar, etc.)  
 Salami (f) salami  
 Salat (m) salad  
 Salbe (f) ointment  
 Salz (nt) salt  
 Sammlung (f) collection  
 (stamps, etc.)  
 Samstag Saturday  
 Sand (m) sand  
 Sandalen (f pl) sandals  
 Sandwich (nt) sandwich  
 Satellitenfernsehen (nt)  
 satellite TV

satt: ich bin satt I'm full  
 sauber clean  
 Sauna (f) sauna  
 Schach chess  
 Schachtel (f) box, packet;  
 Schachtel Pralinen (f)  
 box of chocolates  
 Schaffner (m) conductor (bus)  
 Schal (m) scarf  
 Schallplatte (f) record (music)  
 Schallplattengeschäft (nt)  
 record store  
 Schalter (m) switch; ticket kiosk  
 Schaltknüppel (m) gear lever  
 Schauer (m) shower (rain)  
 Schaumfestiger (m) mousse  
 (for hair)  
 Scheck (m) check  
 Scheckheft (nt) checkbook  
 Scheckkarte (f) debit card  
 Scheinwerfer (m pl) headlights  
 Scheitel (m) part (hair)  
 Schere (f) scissors  
 Schiff (nt) boat, ship  
 Schild (nt) sign  
 Schlaf (m) sleep  
 Schlafanzug (m) pajamas  
 schlafen to sleep  
 Schlaflosigkeit (f) insomnia  
 Schlafsack (m) sleeping bag  
 Schlaftablette (f) sleeping pill  
 Schlafzimmer (nt) bedroom  
 Schlange (f) line (waiting)  
 Schlauch (m) inner tube  
 schlecht bad, poor (quality)  
 schlechter worse  
 schlechtester worst  
 schleudern to skid  
 schließen to close  
 Schlitten (m) sledge, toboggan  
 Schlittschuhe ice skates  
 Schlittschuh laufen gehen  
 to go ice-skating  
 Schloss (nt) castle  
 Schlüssel (m) key  
 Schlussverkauf (m) sale  
 (at reduced prices)  
 Schmerz (m) ache, pain  
 Schmerztablette (f)  
 painkiller  
 Schmuck (m) jewelry  
 schmutzig dirty  
 Schnee (m) snow  
 schneiden to cut  
 schnell fast, quick  
 Schnellimbiss (m) carry-out  
 Schnitt (m) cut  
 Schnuller (m) pacifier (for baby)  
 Schnurrbart (m) mustache  
 Schnürsenkel (m pl) shoelaces  
 Schokolade (f) chocolate

schon already, yet; ist es schon  
 fertig? is it ready yet?  
 schön beautiful, pretty  
 Schornstein (m) chimney  
 Schotte (m) Scotsman  
 Schottin (f) Scotswoman  
 schottisch Scottish  
 Schottland Scotland  
 Schrank (m) cupboard  
 Schraube (f) screw  
 Schraubenschlüssel (m) wrench  
 Schraubenzieher (m)  
 screwdriver  
 schrecklich horrible  
 Schreibmaschine (f) typewriter  
 Schreibpapier (nt)  
 writing paper  
 Schreiner(in) carpenter  
 Schublade (f) drawer  
 Schuhcreme (f) shoe polish  
 Schuhe (m pl) shoes  
 Schuhgeschäft (nt) shoe store  
 Schule (f) school  
 Schulter (f) shoulder  
 Schüssel (f) bowl  
 schwager pregnant  
 Schwager (m) brother-in-law  
 Schwägerin (f) sister-in-law  
 schwarz black  
 schwarze Johannisbeere (f)  
 black currant  
 Schwarzwald (m) Black Forest  
 Schweinefleisch (nt) pork  
 Schweiß (m) sweat  
 Schweiz: die Schweiz  
 Switzerland  
 Schweizer(in) (m/f)  
 Swiss (person)  
 schweizerisch Swiss (adj)  
 schwer heavy, hard (difficult)  
 Schwester (f) sister  
 schwierig difficult  
 Schwimmbad (nt)  
 swimming pool  
 Schwimmen (nt) swimming;  
 schwimmen to swim  
 Schwimmflossen (f pl) flippers  
 schwitzen to sweat  
 schwul gay (homosexual)  
 sechs six  
 sechzehn sixteen  
 sechzig sixty  
 See (m) lake  
 Segelboot (nt) sailboat  
 Segeln (nt) sailing  
 sehen to see; ich kann nichts  
 sehen I can't see  
 sehr very  
 Seide (f) silk  
 Seife (f) soap  
 Seil (nt) rope

sein(e) his  
 Seite (f) page, side  
 Sekretär(in) (m/f) secretary  
 Sekunde (f) second (time)  
 selbständig self-employed  
 selten rare (uncommon)  
 Seminar (nt) seminar  
 Senf (m) mustard  
 September September  
 Serviette (f) napkin  
 Sessel (m) armchair  
 setzen put  
 Shampoo (nt) shampoo  
 Sherry (m) sherry  
 Shorts (f) shorts  
 sicher safe, sure;  
   Sicherheitsgurt (m)  
     seat belt; Sicherheitsnadel (f)  
     safety pin  
 Sie you (singular, formal);  
   sie she/they  
 sieben seven  
 siebzehn seventeen  
 siebzig seventy  
 Silber (nt) silver (metal);  
   silber silver (color)  
 sind: wir/sie/Sie sind;  
   we/they/you (formal) are  
 Singen (nt) singing; singen  
   to sing  
 Sirup (m) syrup  
 Sitz (m) seat  
 Skandinavien Scandinavia  
 Skibindung (f) ski binding  
 Skier (m pl) skis  
 Ski fahren to ski;  
   Skifahren gehen  
   to go skiing  
 Skilift (m) ski lift  
 Skistiefel (m pl) ski boots  
 Skistöcke (m pl) ski poles  
 Skiurlaubsort (m) ski resort  
 Smaragd (m) emerald  
 so like this, so  
 Socken (f pl) socks  
 Sodawasser (nt) soda water  
 Sofa (nt) sofa  
 sofort immediately  
 Sohn (m) son  
 Sonderangebot (nt) bargain  
 Sonne (f) sun  
 sonnenbaden to sunbathe  
 Sonnenbrand (m) sunburn  
 Sonnenbrille sunglasses  
 Sonnenöl (nt) suntan lotion  
 Sonnenschirm (m) sunshade  
 sonnig sunny  
 Sonntag Sunday  
 sorgfältig careful  
 Soße (f) sauce  
 Souvenir (nt) souvenir

sowohl ... als auch ...

both ... and ...

spät late

Spaten (m) spade (shovel)

später later

spazieren gehen to go

for a walk

Spaziergang (m) walk (stroll)

Speck (m) bacon

Speisekarte (f) menu

Speiseraum (m) dining room

Spiegel (m) mirror

Spiel (nt) match (sport)

spielen to play

Spielzeug (nt) toy

Spinat (m) spinach

Spinne (f) spider

Spitze (f) lace; tip (end)

Sport (m) sport; Sportzentrum  
 (nt) gym

Sportwagen (m) stroller

Sprache (f) language

Sprachführer (m) phrasebook

sprechen to speak;

sprechen Sie Englisch?

do you speak English?;

ich spreche kein Deutsch

I don't speak German

Spritze (f) injection, syringe

sprudelnd fizzy (sparkling)

Sprung (m) dive

Sprungbett (nt) diving board

Spülmittel (nt) dishwashing liquid

stabil strong, stable (material)

Stadion (nt) stadium

Stadt (f) town, city

Stadtplan (m) town plan, map

Stadtzentrum (nt) downtown

Stadttrand (m) suburbs

Stand (m) stand

Standlicht (nt) sidelights

Star (m) star (film)

stark strong (person, drink)

Start (m) start

Start- und Landebahn (f)  
 runway

Station station (subway)

Statue (f) statue

Stau (m) traffic jam

Staubsauger (m) vacuum cleaner

Staubtuch (nt) duster

Steak (nt) steak

stechen to bite, sting (insect)

Stecker (m) plug (electrical)

Stecknadel (f) pin

stehlen to steal; es ist gestohlen  
 worden it's been stolen

steht: es steht Ihnen it suits you

Stein (m) rock (stone)

stellen to put

Stoppdecke (f) comforter

sterben to die

Stern (m) star

Stich (m) bite, sting (by insect)

stickig close (stuffy)

Stiefel (m) boot (footwear)

Stiefmutter (m) stepmother

Stiefsohn (m) stepson

Stieftochter (m) stepdaughter

Stiefvater (m) stepfather

Stift (m) pen

still quiet

stillhalten! don't move!

Stimme (f) voice

Stock (m) floor (story)

Stoff (m) material (fabric)

Stöpsel (m) plug (sink)

Stoßstange (f) bumper

Strand (m) beach

Straße (f) road, street

Straßenbahn (f) tram

Streichholz (nt) match (light)

streng strong (taste)

stricken to knit

Strickwaren (f pl) knitwear

Strom (m) electricity

Stromanschluss (m) electrical  
 hook up

Strümpfe (m pl) stockings

Strumpfhose (f) pantyhose

Stück (nt) piece, slice, play

(theatre); fünf Euro das

Stück five euros each

Student(in) (m/f) student

Stuhl (m) chair

Stunde (f) hour, lesson

Sturm (m) storm

Sucher (m) viewfinder

Südafrika South Africa

Süden (m) south

Supermarkt (m) supermarket

Suppe (f) soup

süß sweet (not sour)

Süßigkeit (f) candy

Sweatshirt (nt) sweatshirt

Synagoge (f) synagogue

## T

Tabak (m) tobacco

Tablett (nt) tray

Tablette (f) pill, tablet

Tafel Schokolade (f) bar of  
 chocolate

Tafelwasser (nt) still water

Tag (m) day

Tagebuch (nt) planner

Tagesdecke (f) bedspread

Tagesordnung (f) agenda

Tal (nt) valley

Tampons (m pl) tampons

Tankstelle (f) gas station

**Tante** (f) aunt  
**Tanz** (m) dance  
**tanzen** to dance  
**Tasche** (f) pocket, bag  
**Taschendieb** (m) pickpocket  
**Taschenlampe** (f) flashlight  
**Taschenmesser** (nt) penknife  
**Taschentücher** tissues  
**Tasse** (f) cup  
**Tastatur** (f) keyboard  
**taub** deaf  
**tauchen** to dive  
**tauschen, umtauschen**  
to exchange  
**tausend** thousand  
**Taxi** (nt) taxi  
**Taxistand** (m) taxi stand  
**Technik** (f) engineering  
**Tee** (m) tea; **schwarze Tee**  
black tea; **Tee mit Milch**  
tea with milk  
**Teilchen** (nt) danish pastry  
**Telefon** (nt) telephone  
**Telefonbuch** (nt) directory  
**telefonieren** to telephone  
**Telefonkarte** (f) phone card  
**Telefonzelle** (f) telephone booth  
**Teller** (m) plate  
**Temperatur** (f) temperature  
**Tennis** (nt) tennis  
**Teppich** (m) carpet  
**Termin** (m) appointment  
**Terminal** (nt) terminal  
**Terrasse** (f) terrace  
**Tesafilm** (m) adhesive tape  
**teuer** expensive  
**Theater** (nt) theater  
**tief** deep, low (voice)  
**Tiefkühlkost** (f) frozen foods  
**Tierarzt** (m) vet  
**Tierpass** (m) pet passport  
**Tinte** (f) ink  
**Tisch** (m) table  
**Toast** (m) toast  
**Tochter** (f) daughter  
**Toilette** (f) toilet  
**Toilettenpapier** (nt) toilet paper  
**Tomate** (f) tomato  
**Tomatensaft** (m) tomato juice  
**Tonic** (nt) tonic  
**Töpferei** (f) pottery  
**Tor** (nt) gate  
**tot** dead  
**Tourist(in)** tourist  
**Tradition** (f) tradition  
**Tragetasche** (f) plastic bag  
**Trainingsanzug** (m) jogging suit  
**Traktor** (m) tractor  
**trampen** to hitchhike  
**Trauben** (f pl) grapes  
**traurig** sad

**Treffen** (nt) meeting  
**Treppe** (f) stairs, staircase  
**trinken** to drink  
**Trinkgeld** (nt) tip (money)  
**Trinkwasser** (nt) drinking  
water  
**trocken** dry  
**Tropfen** (f) drops  
**Truhe** (f) chest (furniture)  
**tun** to do  
**Tunnel** (m) tunnel  
**Tür** (f) door  
**Türke** Turk (man)  
**Türkin** Turk (woman)  
**Türkei: die Türkei** Turkey  
**türkisch** Turkish  
**Turm** (m) tower  
**Turnschuhe** athletic shoes

## U

**U-Bahn** (f) subway, metro  
**U-Bahnstation** (f) subway  
station  
**übel: mir ist übel** I feel sick  
**über** over, across, more than  
**überall** everywhere  
**Überführung** (f) overpass  
**überfüllt** crowded  
**übergeben: sich übergeben**  
to be sick (vomit)  
**überholen** to overtake  
**Überlandbus** (m) bus  
(long-distance)  
**übersetzen** to translate  
**Übersetzer(in)** (m/f) translator  
**Überzelt** (nt) fly sheet  
**Uhr** (f) clock, watch  
**um 3 Uhr** at 3 o'clock  
**Umhängetuch** (nt) shawl  
**umziehen** to move (house)  
**umziehen: sich umziehen**  
to change (clothes)  
**und** and  
**Unfall** (m) accident  
**Unfallstation** (f)  
emergency room  
**ungewöhnlich** unusual  
**Universität** (f) university  
**Unkraut** (nt) weeds  
**unmöglich** impossible  
**unten** down; **hier unten**  
down here  
**unter ...** below ..., under ...  
**Untergeschoss** (nt) basement  
**Unterhaltung** (f) entertainment  
**Unterhemd** (nt) vest  
**Unterhose** (f) underpants  
**Unterkunft** (f) accommodation  
**Unterrock** (m) underskirt  
**Untertasse** (f) saucer  
**Unterwäsche** (f) underwear  
**Urlaub** (m) vacation

## V

**Vanille** (f) vanilla  
**Vase** (f) vase  
**Vater** (m) father  
**Vegetarier(in)** (m/f) vegetarian  
(person)  
**vegetarisch** vegetarian (adj)  
**Ventil** (nt) valve  
**Ventilator** (m) fan (ventilator)  
**Verband** (m) bandage  
**Verbrennung** (f) burn  
**Vergaser** (m) carburetor  
**vergessen** to forget  
**Vergrößerung** (f) enlargement  
**verheiratet** married  
**Verhütungsmittel** (nt)  
contraceptive  
**verkaufen** to sell  
**Verkäufer(in)** (m/f) shopkeeper  
**Verkehr** (m) traffic  
**Verkehrsbüro** (nt) tourist office  
**Verlängerungsschnur** (f)  
extension cord  
**Verletzung** (f) injury  
**verlobt** engaged (couple)  
**Verlobte** (m/f) fiancé(e)  
**Vermittlung** (f) operator  
**verriegeln** to bolt  
**verrückt** mad  
**verschieden** different  
**Verschluss** (m) cap (bottle),  
shutter (camera)  
**Versicherung** (f) insurance  
**verspätet** delayed  
**Verspätung: der Bus hat**  
**Verspätung** the bus is late  
**verstehen** understand;  
**ich verstehe** I see/I  
understand; **ich verstehe**  
**nicht** I don't understand  
**versuchen** to try  
**Vertrag** (m) contract  
**Vertreter** (m) agent  
**Verwandte** (m) relative  
**Verzeihung!** sorry! (apology)  
**Vetter** (m) cousin (male)  
**Video** (nt) video  
**Videoassette** video tape (f)  
**Videorecorder** (m)  
video recorder  
**viel** a lot, much  
**vielleicht** maybe, perhaps  
**vier** four  
**Viertel** (nt) quarter  
**vierter** fourth  
**vierzehn** fourteen  
**vierzig** forty

Villa (f) villa  
 Visitenkarte (f) business card  
 Vitamintablette (f)  
 vitamin tablet  
 Vogel (m) bird  
 Voice-mail (f) voicemail  
 Volksmusik (f) folk music  
 voll busy (bar, etc.), full  
 Vollpension full board  
 von of  
 vor ... before ..., in front of ...  
 vorbei over (finished)  
 Vorgesetzte (m/f) superior  
 Vorhang (m) curtain  
 Vorhängeschloss (nt) padlock  
 Vorlesungssaal (m) lecture hall  
 Vorname (m) first name  
 Vorspeisen (f pl) appetizers  
 Vortrag (m) presentation

## W

Wächter (m) guard  
 Wagen (m) car (train)  
 wahr true  
 während during  
 Wald (m) forest  
 Wales Wales  
 Waliser(in) (m) Welshman/  
 Welshwoman  
 walisisch Welsh  
 Wand (f) wall (inside)  
 Wandern (nt) hiking  
 Wandteppich (m) tapestry  
 wann? when?  
 war was; ich war I was;  
 er/sie/es war he/she/it was  
 waren were; wir/sie waren  
 we/they were; Sie waren  
 you (formal) were  
 warm warm  
 warst were; du warst  
 you (informal) were  
 warten wait; warten Sie! wait!  
 Wartesaal (m) waiting room  
 (station)  
 Wartezimmer (nt)  
 waiting room  
 warum? why?  
 was? what?; was ist das?  
 what's that/this?  
 Waschbecken (nt)  
 bathroom sink  
 Wäsche (f) laundry (dirty clothes)  
 Wäscheklammer (f) clothespin  
 Wäscherei (f) laundry (place)  
 Waschpulver (nt)  
 laundry detergent  
 Waschsalon (m) laundromat  
 Wasser (nt) water;  
 Wasser mit Kohlensäure,  
 das Sprudelwasser  
 sparkling water; Wasser ohne  
 Kohlensäure still water  
 Wasserfall (m) waterfall  
 Wasserkessel (m) teakettle  
 Watte (f) cotton balls  
 Webseite (f) website  
 Wechselkurs (m)  
 exchange rate  
 wechseln to change (money)  
 Wecker (m) alarm clock  
 weder ... noch ...  
 neither ... nor ...  
 Weg (m) path  
 weich soft  
 Weihnachten (nt) Christmas  
 weil because  
 Wein (m) wine;  
 Weinkarte (f) wine list  
 Weinbrand (m) brandy  
 weinen to cry (weep)  
 weiß white  
 weit far; wie weit ist es?  
 how far is it?; ist es weit  
 von hier? is it far away?  
 welcher? which?  
 Welle (f) wave  
 wellig wavy (hair)  
 weniger less  
 wenn if  
 wer? who?  
 Werkstatt (f) car repairs, garage  
 Wertsachen (f pl) valuables  
 Wespe (f) wasp  
 Westen (m) west  
 Wetter (nt) weather  
 Whisky (m) whisky  
 wie? how?; wie heißen Sie?  
 what's your name?; wie spät  
 ist es? what time is it?  
 Wien Vienna  
 willkommen welcome  
 Wimperntusche (f) mascara  
 Wind (m) wind  
 Windel (f) diaper  
 Windschutzscheibe (f)  
 windshield  
 winken to wave  
 wir we  
 wissen to know (a fact);  
 ich weiß nicht I don't know  
 Witz (m) joke  
 wo? where?  
 Woche (f) week  
 Wodka (m) vodka  
 Wohnmobil (nt) camper van  
 Wohnung (f) apartment, flat  
 Wohnwagen (m) caravan  
 Wohnzimmer (nt) lounge  
 (in house)  
 Wolldecke (f) rug (blanket)  
 Wolle (f) wool  
 Wort (nt) word  
 Wörterbuch (nt) dictionary  
 Wurst (f) sausage

## Z

Zahl (f) number  
 Zahn (m) tooth  
 Zahnarzt (m) dentist  
 Zahnbürste (f) toothbrush  
 Zahnpasta (f) toothpaste  
 Zahnschmerzen (f) toothache  
 Zäpfchen (nt) suppository  
 Zaun (m) fence  
 zehn ten  
 zehntausend ten thousand  
 Zeit (f) time  
 Zeitplan (m) schedule  
 Zeitschrift (f) magazine  
 Zeitung (f) newspaper  
 Zeitungsladen (m) newsstand  
 Zelt (nt) tent  
 Zeltboden (m) groundsheet  
 Zeltstange (f) tent pole  
 Zentrale (f) headquarters  
 Zentralheizung (f) central  
 heating  
 zerbrochen broken (vase, etc.)  
 Zeuge(in) (m/f) witness  
 ziehen pull  
 ziemlich fairly, quite  
 Zigarette (f) cigarette  
 Zigarre (f) cigar  
 Zimmer (nt) room  
 Zimmermädchen (nt) maid  
 Zimmerservice (m) room service  
 Zitrone (f) lemon  
 Zoll (m) Customs  
 zollfrei duty-free  
 Zoo (m) zoo  
 zu too (excessively)  
 Zucker (m) sugar  
 Zug (m) train  
 zum to; zum Bahnhof  
 to the station  
 Zündkerze (f) spark plug  
 Zündung (f) ignition  
 Zunge (f) tongue  
 zurückgeben to return  
 (give back)  
 zurückkommen to return  
 (come back)  
 zusammen together  
 Zusammenbruch (m); nervous  
 breakdown  
 Zuschlag (m) supplement  
 zwanzig twenty  
 Zweck(m) purpose; es hat  
 keinen Zweck it's no use  
 zwei two;



**zwei Einzelbetten** *twin beds;*

**zwei Wochen** *two weeks*

**Zweigstelle** (f) *branch*

**zweiter** *second (in series);*

**zweiter Klasse** *second class*

**Zwiebel** (f) *onion*

**zwischen ...** *between ...*

**zwölf** *twelve*

# Acknowledgments

The publisher would like to thank the following for their help in the preparation of this book: Edith and Dieter Gollnow for the organization of location photography in Germany; Die Bahn DB, Deutsche Bahn AG, Hannover; Ustra Hannoversche Verkehrsbetriebe AG, Hannover; Raustaurant: Der Gartensaal im Neuen Rathaus, Hannover; Sprengel-Museum Hannover; Polizei-Direktion Hannover; Café An der Martkirche, Hannover; Teestübchen Am Ballhof; Europa-Apotheke, Hannover; Wochenmarkt Gretchenstraße; Magnet Showroom, Enfield; MyHotel, London; Kathy Gammon; Juliette Meeus and Harry.

Language content for Dorling Kindersley by **g-and-w publishing**

Managed by **Jane Wightwick**

Editing and additional input: **Sam Fletcher, Christopher Wightwick**

Additional design assistance: **Lee Riches, Fehmi Cömert, Sally Geeve**

Additional editorial assistance: **Paul Docherty, Mary Lindsay, Lynn Bresler**

Picture research: **Louise Thomas**

## Picture credits

Key: t=top; b=bottom; l=left, r=right; c=center; A=above; B=below

p2 **Alamy**: Chris Warham; p4/5 **Alamy**: Goodshoot tr; p6/7 **Laura Knox**: cl; p10/11 **Alamy**: BananaStock cAr, bl; RubberBall cBl; p12/13 **Alamy**: John Foxx cAr; RubberBall br; **DK Images**: cl; Steve Shott cBr; **Ingram Image Library**: tr, cr; p14/15 **Alamy**: Comstock Images tcr; **Dreamstime.com**: Slobodan Mračina (cl); **Ingram Image Library**: cAl, cl, cBl, cAr, cBr, bcr; p16/17 **Alamy**: RubberBall bcr; **Ingram Image Library**: tr; p18/19 **Alamy**: Foodfolio cr; **DK Images**: David Murray tr; Ian O'Leary clB; p22/23 **Alamy**: Image Source cAr; Think Stock bcl; **DK Images**: cl, Susanna Price br; Magnus Rew tcrB; **Ingram Image Library**: tcr; p24/25 **Alamy**: Archivberlin Fotoagentur GmbH dA, Dave King tcr; p26/27 **Ingram Image Library**: cl; p28/29 **DK Images**: Dave King cr; Stephen Oliver tcr; Matthew Ward bclA; **Ingram Image Library**: bcrA, bcr; p30/31 **Alamy**: Comstock Images bcl; **DK Images**: cl, bclA; Andy Crawford cAr; p34/35 **Dreamstime.com**: Slobodan Mračina (cb); **Ingram Image Library**: tcr; iStockphoto.com: nicolas\_ (tl); p36/37 **DK Images**: bcl, bcr; Magnus Rew cl; **Dreamstime.com**: Slobodan Mračina (cla); **Ingram Image Library**: bl; iStockphoto.com: nicolas\_ (cla/sim card); p38/39 **Alamy**: Imageshop / Zefa Visual Media cl; p40/41 **Alamy**: Archiv Fotoagentur GmbH bcr; **DK Images**: Dorota and Mariusz Jarymowicz cl; p42/43 **Alamy**: Michael Klinet tcrB; **Alamy**: Comstock Images cAr; Goodshoot tcr; **Nigel Schermuly**: cr; p44/45 Courtesy of **Audi UK** c; p46/47 **Alamy**: Imageshop / Zefa Visual Media br; Courtesy of **Audi UK**: tcr; **DK Images**: Dorota and Mariusz Jarymowicz bcl, bcr; **Ingram Image Library**: tclB; **Nigel Schermuly**: cr; p48/49 **Alamy**: Chris Warham c; **DK Images**: Dorota and Mariusz Jarymowicz bcl; p50/51 **Alamy**: Andre Jenny c; p52/53 **Alamy**: Pat Behnke tcrB; **Alamy**: Image Farm Inc cAr; **DK Images**: cl; p54/55 **Alamy**: Jackson Smith bclA; **Alamy**: BananaStock cl; John Foxx c; Image Source cAr; ThinkStock tcr; **DK Images**: Andy Crawford bcl; p56/57 **Alamy**: Goodshoot clA; Chris Warham cl; Courtesy of **Audi UK**: bc; **DK Images**: Dorota and Mariusz Jarymowicz tl, clAA; p58/59 **Alamy**: Michael Juno tcr; **Alamy**: Brand X Pictures cBl, cBB; Image Source cAA; **DK Images**: cAl; p60/61 **123RF.com**: shutswis (cb); **Alamy**: Robert Harding Picture Library bcr; **Alamy**: imagebroker bl; Image Source cAr; **DK Images**: Steve Gorton tcrB; Pia Tryde cAr; **Ingram Image Library**: cr; p62/63 **DK Images**: Stephen Whitehorn c; p64/65 **Alamy**: Arcadid bcrA; Dennis Hallinan c; **Alamy**: GKPhotography cBr; Goodshoot cAA; Justin Kase tcrB; **DK Images**: Steve Tanner cAr; **Ingram Image Library**: tcr; p66/67 **Alamy**: Arcadid tl; **Alamy**: Image Source cAr; **DK Images**: tr; Stephen Whitehorn bl; **Ingram Image Library**: br; p68/69 **Alamy**: Balearic Pictures cr; **Alamy**: Celestial Panoramas cAl; p70/71 **Ingram Image Library**: cr; p72/73 **Alamy**: imagebroker tcrB; Image Source cAr; Comstock Images tcr; Elizabeth Whiting & Associates bl; p74/75 **Alamy RF**: Doug Norman bl; **Ingram Image Library**: c; p76/77 **Alamy**: Balearic Pictures cBl; **Alamy**: Celestial Panoramas Ltd bcl; p80/81 **Getty**: Taxi / Rob Melnychuk bc; **Ingram Image Library**: cAr; Xerox UK Ltd: tcr; p82/83 **Alamy**: wildphotos.com tcr; **Alamy**: FogStock cAA; Momentum Creative Group cAl; Shosh / Up the Res cBl; **Ingram Image Library**: cl; p84/85 **Alamy**: Brand X Pictures cr; f1 Online c; **Alamy RF**: image100 bl; SuperStock tr; **Ingram Image Library**: crB; p86/87 **Getty**: Taxi / Rob Melnychuk tc; p90/91 **Alamy**: Brand X Pictures tcr; **DK Images**: cl; David Jordan cAr; Stephen Oliver cr; **Ingram Image Library**: cBr; p92/93 **Alamy**: Pixland cr; **DK Images**: cl; Guy Ruyecart tr; p94/95 **Alamy**: David Kamm cl; Phototake Inc bcl; **Alamy**: Comstock Images cr; ImageState Royalty Free bcr; **DK Images**: Stephen Oliver tcr; p96/97 **Alamy**: Pixland br; **DK Images**: tl; **Ingram Image Library**: tr; p98/99 **Alamy**: Bildarchiv Monheim GmbH / Jochen Helle c; **Alamy**: ThinkStock br; **DK Images**: Jake Fitzjones bl; **Dreamstime.com**: Alexandre Dvihally (tl); p100/101 **DK Images**: Steve Gorton tcr; p102/103 **Alamy**: The Garden Picture Library tcr; cAA; Hortus br; D Hurst tcrB; **Ingram Image Library**: cAr; p104/105 **DK Images**: Paul Bricknell cl(6); Jane Burton bcl; Geoff Dann cl(2); Max Gibbs cl(4); Frank Greenaway cl(3); Dave King cl(1), cAr; Tracy Morgan c(5); p106/107 **Alamy**: The Garden Picture Library br; **DK Images**: Peter Kindersley cr; p108/109 **Alamy**: John Foxx tcr; p110/111 **Alamy**: RubberBall cr; **DK Images**: Andy Crawford cl; p112/113 **Alamy RF**: Image Source cl; **DK Images**: Dave King bcl; Steve Shott bl; **Ingram Image Library**: bcrA; p114/115 **Alamy**: FogStock tcr; **Alamy**: Image Source cAr; Index Stock cAl; p116/117 **Alamy**: The Garden Picture Library cAl; **Alamy**: clB; p118/119 **DK Images**: Steve Gorton tcr; **GettyNews**: Giuseppe Cacace c; p120/121 **Alamy**: ImageState / Pictor International cl; Shotfile cBl; **Alamy**: Sarkis Images tcr; **DK Images**: bcl; p122/123 **Alamy**: BananaStock cAr; **Ingram Image Library**: cl; p124/125 **Alamy**: ImageState / Pictor International bclA; Shotfile cBl; **DK Images**: bcl; Paul Bricknell tc(5); Geoff Dann tc(3); Max Gibbs tc(1); Frank Greenaway tc(2); Dave King tc(4); Tracy Morgan tc(6); **Ingram Image Library**: bl; p126/127 **Alamy**: Pat Behnke blA; **Alamy**: Image Farm Inc bl; p128 **DK Images**.

All other images **Mike Good**.

# 15-MINUTE GERMAN

## LEARN IN JUST 12 WEEKS

- Unique **visual approach** makes learning quick, easy, and fun.
- No writing or homework—just use the book to **test yourself**.
- **Real-life examples** cover every vacation and business situation.
- **Free audio app** features native speakers to help you perfect your pronunciation as you learn German.
- Whether you're starting from scratch or just in need of a refresher, **there is no easier way to learn German**—fast.

Also from DK



App available on



www.dk.com

ISBN 978-1-4654-6295-4

Printed in China



9 781465 462954

5 1 2 9 5